



E



THE LIBRARY  
OF  
THE UNIVERSITY  
OF CALIFORNIA  
LOS ANGELES

*Ex Libris*

SIR MICHAEL SADLER

ACQUIRED 1948

WITH THE HELP OF ALUMNI OF THE  
SCHOOL OF EDUCATION

249

    

     Jester



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

THE GREAT EDUCATORS

x.

PESTALOZZI

## The Great Educators.

A Series of Volumes by Eminent Writers, presenting in their entirety "A Biographical History of Education."

*Each Subject forms a Complete Volume, crown 8vo., 5s.*

- ARISTOTLE**, and the Ancient Educational Ideals. By THOMAS DAVIDSON, M.A., LL.D.
- LOYOLA**, and the Educational System of the Jesuits. By Rev. THOMAS HUGHES, S.J.
- ALCUIN**, and the Rise of the Christian Schools. By Professor ANDREW F. WEST, Ph.D.
- FROEBEL**, and Education by Self-Activity. By H. COURTHOPE BOWEN, M.A.
- ABELARD**, and the Origin and Early History of Universities. By Professor JULES GABRIEL COMPAYRÉ.
- HERBART** and the Herbartians. By CHARLES DE GARMO, Ph.D.
- THOMAS AND MATTHEW ARNOLD**, and their Influence on English Education. By Sir JOSHUA FITCH, M.A., LL.D.
- HORACE MANN**, and the Common School Revival in the United States. By B. A. HINSDALE, Ph.D., LL.D.
- ROUSSEAU**, and Education according to Nature. By THOMAS DAVIDSON, M.A., LL.D.
- PESTALOZZI**; and the Foundation of the Modern Elementary School. By A. PINLOCHE, Professor in the University of Liège.

LONDON:

WILLIAM HEINEMANN, 21 BEDFORD STREET, W.C.

REGISTRY  
COPY

# PESTALOZZI

AND

THE FOUNDATION OF THE MODERN  
ELEMENTARY SCHOOL

BY

A. PINLOCHE

SOMETIME PROFESSOR AT THE UNIVERSITY OF LILLE  
PROFESSOR IN THE LYCÉE CHARLEMAGNE AND THE ÉCOLE  
POLYTECHNIQUE, PARIS

LONDON  
WILLIAM HEINEMANN

1902

[*All rights reserved*]

*This Edition enjoys copyright in  
all countries signatory to the Berne  
Treaty, and is not to be imported  
into the United States of America.*



Library  
LB  
627  
P65  
1902

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	ix
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	xv

### PART I

CHAPTER

I. Childhood and Youth of Pestalozzi . . . . .	3
II. Neuhof (1771-1798) . . . . .	15
III. Stanz (1798-1799) . . . . .	30
IV. Burgdorf and Münchenbuchsee (1799-1805) . . . . .	37
V. Yverdon (1805-1825) . . . . .	61
VI. Neuhof again (1825-1827) . . . . .	114

### PART II

#### BOOK I

I. Education from the Social Point of View . . . . .	121
II. Aim and Theory of Education . . . . .	125
III. On the Education of Lower Classes . . . . .	140
IV. Private Education and Public Education . . . . .	146

#### BOOK II

I. Criticism of the Existing Methods . . . . .	149
II. Nature, Aim, and Division of Elementary Education . . . . .	161

CHAPTER	PAGE
III. The Elementary Method . . . . .	179
IV. Sense-perception as the Psychological Founda- tion of Intellectual Education . . . . .	197
V. The Method of Sense-perception, or Elementary Method . . . . .	210
VI. Moral and Religious Education . . . . .	256

## BOOK III

I. Other Doctrines . . . . .	276
II. Pestalozzi on his Own Work . . . . .	280

## PART III

I. Pestalozzi's Influence on Germany, especially in Prussia . . . . .	289
II. Pestalozzi's Influence in Other Countries . . . . .	301
INDEX . . . . .	303

## INTRODUCTION

Prüfet alles, behaltet das Gute und wenn etwas Besseres in euch selber gereift, so setzet es zu dem, was ich auch in diesen Bogen in Wahrheit und Liebe zu geben versuchte, in Wahrheit und Liebe hinzu.

(Weigh all, keep what is good, and if something better ripen in you, add it in truth and love to what I have tried to give in truth and love in these sheets.)

PESTALOZZI, *Schwanengesang, Motto.*

## INTRODUCTION

WHEN we consider the importance that is attached to popular education in all civilised countries at the present time, we experience a certain difficulty in remembering that it was not always thus, and only a study of history convinces us that this anxiety to raise the lower classes intellectually and morally to a higher level does not date farther back than a century. It is a curious thing that, while France realised the political enfranchisement of citizens at the price of the most frightful of revolutions, in a neighbouring country, Switzerland, which was also to profit largely by this revolution, a man of genius, as earnest as he was modest, worked almost single-handed at the intellectual and moral enfranchisement of the lower classes, and, completing the work of France, immortalised himself by creating, at the price of his repose and happiness, what was until then almost unknown, the education of the lower classes. This man was Pestalozzi.

We may indeed declare, without fear of exaggeration, that before Pestalozzi popular education did not exist at all. Even in the country where statesmen paid the greatest attention to the subject, in Germany, it was far from existing in reality. Luther had certainly proclaimed the need of it, but the elementary school, which he really created, had for a long time

been a mere class for the teaching of the catechism. It would, however, be unjust to omit the mention of the earnest endeavours of Francke,<sup>1</sup> the founder of pietism, and of the philanthropist Rochow,<sup>2</sup> an old Prussian officer turned canon, who, touched by the misery of the rural population, had realised that instruction was the only means of improving their lot, and had founded a school at his own expense, with which the pastor was to have nothing to do. But Francke's schools had retained an essentially religious character, and Rochow's attempt, although supported by the government of Frederick II, was opposed by the clergy, and the reactionary government of Frederick William II did not continue the experiment; consequently it had no other result than that of once more attracting the attention of Prussian

X <sup>1</sup> It was in 1695 that Francke one day found four thalers and sixteen groschen (about three dollars and a half) in the poor-box, and determined to found a school for the poor with this sum. Later on he founded a training school for teachers, the first of the celebrated Francke training schools in Halle, to which secondary schools have since been attached. (*Vide Pinloche, La Réforme de l'Éducation en Allemagne au XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle*, p. 4.)

<sup>2</sup> Rochow (1734-1805) published in 1772 his *Attempt at a Primer for the Children of the Rural Population or for Use in Village Schools* (*Versuch eines Schulbuches für Kinder der Landleute, oder zum Gebrauch in Dorfschulen*), in which he demanded free education for the people. The same year he became teacher at the modest school at Reckahn (the cost of which he paid out of his own pocket), which soon became an object of curiosity and universal admiration. He also published besides *The Peasants' Friend* (*Der Bauernfreund*, 1773) and the *Children's Friend* (*Der Kinderfreund*, 1775), a species of reading book for the use of the lower classes, which had an immense success; a treatise entitled *The Amelioration of the National Character through Elementary Schools* (*Von Verbesserung des Nationalcharakters durch Volksschulen*, 1779). *Vide Pinloche, ibid.*, pp. 420-432.

statesmen to the necessity of organising the instruction of the people independently of the Church, and of demonstrating to them the possibility of such organisation.

With these few isolated exceptions, the children of the lower classes only learnt at school reading and writing (and that very indifferently) and in the Protestant countries their catechism before confirmation. And the pastor generally handed even the duty of teaching that over to the clerk. Often again the office of teacher was filled by some zealous workman, some old soldier, or even some servant out of a place, who gathered the children together for an hour or two on Sundays to teach them reading and writing as well as he could. The trade of schoolmaster had become the refuge of all who could not get employment elsewhere. To such educators was the instruction of the people abandoned towards the end of the eighteenth century.

As the method used was on a par with the teachers, one may easily conceive the result. The rod mostly took the place of all pedagogy, and in the most favourable cases the memory was the only faculty exercised. Comenius, certainly, had made considerable progress as early as the seventeenth century, and had indicated to a certain extent the road to follow by pointing out what profit could be gained in teaching by observation, direct or by the help of pictures of actual objects, and by creating the method since called *perceptive*, or *teaching by the help of sense-perception*. But these methods, which were of a purely empirical nature, had fallen into oblivion; and Basedow, who went back to them later on, at the end of the eighteenth

century, without however grasping the full extent of the educational problem which remained to solve, had only applied them to the instruction of the children of the middle classes, so that his attempt had had no result outside secondary education. Finally, we know that Rousseau himself was of opinion that the poor had no need of education, and went so far as to declare that he would never trouble himself about a puny, sickly child, even if he were to live to be eighty. For Pestalozzi was reserved the undying fame of having not only restored to credit the processes of the method of *sense-perception*, already known and applied, but, above all, of having realised both the social importance of the education of the people and the most suitable means of determining its method.

Are we to believe Pestalozzi when at the time that he was publishing his first writings on education he tells us that he "had not read a book for thirty years," and that he "knew nothing of what Rousseau and Basedow had done or desired to do," although ever since "half the world had been stirred up in favour of the reform of education"<sup>1</sup>? His relations with Iselin sufficiently prove that he could not have been completely ignorant of the well-advertised work of the philanthropists, as we have shown elsewhere.<sup>2</sup> As to *Émile*, at the time when Pestalozzi lived, it was not even necessary to have read it to be affected by its influence, which was indeed universal, and made itself profoundly felt in all parts of the civilised world. He himself alludes to this influence. But if we cannot deny that Pestalozzi profited, even if only

<sup>1</sup> 3, 176.

<sup>2</sup> Pinloche, *La Réforme*, etc., p. 533.



de Gump

unconsciously, by the movement of opinion created by Rousseau and Basedow, and even in particular by some of the pedagogical processes restored to credit by the latter, who had not invented them either,<sup>1</sup> we must nevertheless acknowledge that his originality was not less complete and powerful because it was above all in himself, and that his ideas as a whole actually constitute a new doctrine, as is shown in the summary which is the object of this work.

We cannot justly or fully appreciate the work of a man who was at the same time a practical worker as well as a theorist on education unless we know his life and his writings. After the imposing mass of documents patiently collected and published by Mr. Morf,<sup>2</sup> the very complete introduction, in spite of some errors, of Mr. Friedrich Mann in his edition of *Selected Works*,<sup>3</sup> and especially the excellent study of Mr. J. Guillaume,<sup>4</sup> and the most valuable data given in the *Pestalozzi Blätter*,<sup>5</sup> by Dr. O. Hunziker, director of the Pestalozzian Museum at Zürich,<sup>6</sup> not to mention innumerable other works on the subject, there is nothing left to be done for the biography of Pestalozzi, unless indeed new documents be discovered. It has therefore seemed to us sufficient to give the indispensable summary taken from reliable sources. But until now there has not existed a luminous and complete account of the

x

<sup>1</sup> See on this subject the complaints of the philanthropist Wolke: Morf, *Zur Biographie*, etc., III, pp. 168 et seq.  
<sup>2</sup> *Zur Biographie Pestalozzis*, 4 Bde., 1865-1889.  
<sup>3</sup> *Pestalozzis ausgewählte Werke*, 4 Bde.  
<sup>4</sup> *Pestalozzi, étude biographique*, 1890.  
<sup>5</sup> *Pestalozzi Blätter*, the special organ of the Pestalozzian Museum since 1880 (*vide* biography).  
<sup>6</sup> Founded in 1879 under the name of *Pestalozzi Stübchen*.

doctrines of the great pedagogue, which are scattered through the medley of eighteen volumes,<sup>1</sup> and expressed in a form that is far from being literary, in a language often obscure and even incorrect, and consequently almost inaccessible to the majority of readers. That is especially the work we have undertaken, trying to bring some order and light into the chaos, and confining the author to a fixed plan, which is, we acknowledge, quite incompatible with his character. We know that we lay ourselves open to some reproach in proceeding thus. But if we admit the impossibility and also the uselessness of reproducing *in extenso* such a vast mass of writings, many of which, even if we confine ourselves strictly to pedagogical works, have lost their interest for us, we must also acknowledge that no other means remained of putting the essential points of this original and powerful pedagogy in the light they deserve, without which it is impossible to conceive and to understand the whole of modern education.

<sup>1</sup> *Pestalozzis sämtliche Werke*, etc., edited by Seyffarth, 1869-1873.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

WE cannot attempt to give a complete list of the numerous editions and translations of the different works of Pestalozzi and of the countless publications having reference to the great pedagogue. The most important of these are to be found in Raumer's *History of Pedagogy* (Geschichte der Pädagogik), Vol. II, p. 489; in J. Guillaume's biographical study (pp. 437 *et seq.*), quoted hereafter; and in Israel's *Versuch einer Zusammenstellung der Schriften von und über Pestalozzi*, Zschopau, 1894.

### I. WORKS BY PESTALOZZI

#### *Complete Works:*

Pestalozzis sämtliche Schriften, 15 vols. Cotta. Stuttgart und Tübingen, 1819-1826.

Pestalozzis sämtliche Werke, 18 vols., ed. by Seyffarth. Brandenburg, 1869-1873.

Pestalozzis sämtliche Werke, ed. by Seyffarth. Liegnitz, 1890-1901 (enlarged edition; the most complete in existence). X ?

#### *Selections from Pestalozzi's Works:*

Pestalozzis ausgewählte Werke, ed. by Fr. Mann, 4 vols. (Bibliothek pädagogischer Klassiker. H. Beyer. Langensalza), 1871, and later on: *How Gertrude teaches her Children*, translated by Lucy E. Holland and Frances C. Turner, and edited by E. Cooke. London, 1894.

## II. THE LATEST AND MOST IMPORTANT WORKS ON PESTALOZZI

Karl von Raumer, *Geschichte der Pädagogik* (Vol. II, chapter on Pestalozzi). Stuttgart, 1843-1847.

Henry Barnard, *Life, Educational Principles, and Methods of John Henry Pestalozzi* (contains a translation of Raumer's article and of several of Pestalozzi's works, and a short account of Pestalozzi and his co-workers). New York, 1859.

Mörkofer, *Die schweizerische Literatur des 18. Jahrhunderts* (chapter on Pestalozzi). Leipzig, 1861.

H. Morf, *Zur Biographie Pestalozzis*, 4 vols. Winterthur, 1868-1889.

O. Hunziker, *Geschichte der schweizerischen Volksschule*, 3 vols. Zürich, 1881-1882, id. *Allgemeine deutsche Biographie* (article on Pestalozzi) and several notices.

F. Hérisson, *Pestalozzi élève de J. J. Rousseau*. Paris, 1886.

J. Guillaume, *Pestalozzi, étude biographique*. Paris, 1890.

B. Gebhardt, *Die Einführung der Pestalozzischen Methode in Preussen*. Berlin, 1896.

r

PART I  
PESTALOZZI'S LIFE



## CHAPTER I

### CHILDHOOD AND YOUTH OF PESTALOZZI

(1746-1771)

Pestalozzi's earliest youth.—His first education.—His university studies.—Influence of Rousseau's writings.—The *Helvetian Society*.—Pestalozzi's ideas on social questions.—He turns farmer.—His marriage.—Failure of his attempt at farming.

HEINRICH PESTALOZZI was born at Zürich on the 12th of January, 1746. He belonged to a family of Italian Protestant refugees which had settled in that town toward the middle of the sixteenth century. His father, Johann Baptist Pestalozzi, who was twenty-eight years old when Heinrich was born, had a certain reputation as surgeon and as oculist. His mother, Susanne Hotz, of Richtersweil, was the niece of the General Hotz who perished in 1799 at the battle of Schännis. Johann Baptist Pestalozzi died in 1751, leaving Susanne with three children, the survivors of seven, Heinrich, then scarcely five years old, his brother, aged six, who later on went to sea, never to return, and a younger sister who, in 1777, married Gross, a merchant of Leipzig.

In order to meet the needs of the family with her more than modest resources, Pestalozzi's mother had to practise the most rigid economy and even to endure privations. / "My mother," he tells us, "sacrificed

herself with the most utter self-devotion to the bringing up of her three children, depriving herself of everything which at her age and in her surroundings could have had attractions for her." She was wonderfully helped in this by a servant for whom Pestalozzi ever cherished a grateful remembrance, the faithful Babeli, who had promised the dying father not to abandon those whom he left behind.

"Difficult as the conscientious fulfilment of this promise might be, the thought never came into her mind, that she could ever cease, or want to cease, to keep it. The position of my widowed mother demanded the utmost economy, but the trouble our Babeli took to perform impossibilities in this respect is almost incredible. In order to buy a basket of vegetables or fruit a few kreuzers cheaper, she would go back three or four times to the market and watch for the moment when the market-women wanted to go home. . . . If we children only wanted to set foot in the street, or go somewhere where we had no business, Babeli stopped us with the words: 'What do you want to go and ruin your clothes and your shoes all for nothing for? Look how your mother deprives herself of everything in order to bring you up properly; how she goes nowhere for weeks and months, and saves every kreuzer she possibly can for your education.' . . . My brother and sister and I always had very grand Sunday clothes; but we were only permitted to wear them a short time, and we had to change as soon as we came home, so that they might last a long time as Sunday clothes."

Pestalozzi attributes to this exclusively maternal bringing up, firstly, his exaggerated sensibility, and secondly, that lack of manly qualities which a paternal



guidance is alone capable of developing. Weak and delicate from his birth, never having, as he says, "come out from behind the stove," he remained the most awkward and clumsy child of his age; he was the laughing-stock of his fellows, and, what is more important, he gained no knowledge of life or of men.

"My character as a child was determined by my feelings; I was carried away completely by the impressions of the moment; I acted hastily and without reflection. I only saw life in the narrow confines of my mother's sitting room, and in the no less narrow trammels of my school life; real life was almost as strange to me as if I did not dwell in the world in which I lived. I thought everybody was at least as good-natured and confiding as I was myself. Consequently, I was as a matter of course, from my youth up, the victim of every one who wanted to make game of me. It was not in my nature to think evil of any one, until I actually saw the evil done or suffered from it myself." The schoolmaster, too, declared that "one would never get anything out of that child," and his schoolfellows made fun of him on account of his displeasing countenance and his extraordinary untidiness and dirtiness.

Pestalozzi's grandfather was pastor at Höngg, in the canton of Zürich, and took a great interest in the village school there. He superintended the teaching of the children, visited their families, and assumed, in short, the functions of educator of the people, whose spiritual direction was confided to his care. "His school, however defective it might be in point of method, was in living connection with the moral life and the home education of the people, and this combined education cultivated effectively and energetically

the practice of habits of attention, obedience, industry, and effort, in short, laid the essential foundations of education."<sup>1</sup> Young Pestalozzi, who often went to Hönigg, had before him, then, at an early age, the model of a good man, who, although he followed the errors of the old systems of education, nevertheless attached the greatest importance to the education of the lower classes; and there is no doubt that this example, joined to the sight of the misery of the rural population, which he there had the opportunity of seeing closely, must have struck him and influenced him in the choice of a vocation.

Pestalozzi was first sent to the elementary school, and although Zürich then possessed an educational organisation superior to that of other Swiss and even German towns, he retained an impression of his school life, which we can easily picture to ourselves, if we remember what was then the condition of the education of the people. From the elementary school he passed to the preparatory school and then to the Zürich Latin school (*collegium humanitatis*), and finally to the Carolinum, also called *collegium publicum*, a kind of higher public school, where among his teachers were two men, celebrated in the history of German literature, Bodmer and Breitinger, who were to have the greatest influence on him.

We may easily believe him when he tells us that the instruction given in this establishment, excellent as it was as regards its intrinsic value, contributed nothing toward developing his practical sense. But is he right when he makes this same instruction responsible for the evils which he afterward had to

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 160.

endure? He recognises himself, that he did not always profit by it as much as might have been desirable. "Although I was one of the best pupils, I nevertheless, with an incomprehensible thoughtlessness, made mistakes, of which not one of the worst was guilty. While, as a rule, the essence of the subjects taught appealed strongly to my interest, the form in which they were presented left me mostly indifferent and without ideas. Although I was behind my schoolfellows in some parts of certain subjects, in other parts I excelled them to an unusual degree."<sup>1</sup>

The professors of the Carolinum were eminently men of high culture, but they were not sufficiently in touch with the necessities of practical life. "Freedom, independence, beneficence, self-sacrifice, and patriotism," was the motto of our public education. But the means of attaining all this which was especially recommended to us, intellectual preëminence, was left without a sufficient and thorough development of those practical qualities which essentially lead to the desired end. They taught us to dreamily seek for independence in the verbal recognition of truth, without making us feel keenly the need of what would have been essentially necessary, if we were to attain both inward and outward independence, domestic and civic." This idealism went so far "that we boys imagined we could prepare ourselves thoroughly for the petty civic life in one of the Swiss cantons, by a superficial school knowledge of the great Greek and Roman civic life."<sup>2</sup> In everything men had got

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 163.

<sup>2</sup> In an article entitled *Agis*, which appeared in the *Lindauer Nachrichten*, Pestalozzi depicts a king of this name reforming the

farther and farther away from nature. All the books of the time, however much good they might contain, were the products of an utter artificialness, and no longer had that good sense, that simplicity, that natural force, characteristic of the pristine national spirit, which was exactly what the youth contemporary with Pestalozzi wished to reconstitute. The appearance of *Émile* came just at the right moment to rouse these ideal aspirations. "As soon as *Émile* appeared, my visionary nature, already unpractical to the highest degree, was enthusiastically taken possession of by this likewise most unpractical book of dreams." Like so many others, Pestalozzi thought he had found in Rousseau's doctrines the "universal panacea" which was to give a new life to education, and consequently to the human race. The *Contrat Social* also made a deep impression on him, with the result that he gave up the ecclesiastical career to which, with the majority of the pupils of the Carolinum, he had intended to devote himself. The non-success of his first sermon also contributed to confirm this decision, and to make him resolve to enter the legal career, which seemed to him more likely to give him the means of attaining, sooner or later, an active influence over his fellow-citizens and his country. But he was dissuaded from this project by the friend on whose counsels he most relied, Bluntschli. Bluntschli, at that time very ill and hopeless of recovery, on his death-bed adjured him not to embrace a career which his good nature and confident disposition made most dangerous for him. "Seek a calm and peaceful career," he said, "and never begin

manners of the Lacedæmonians according to the ideas of Rousseau. (Ed. Seyffarth, vol. 8.)

any important undertaking, the failure of which might in any way be dangerous to you, without having a man at your side who, with reliable fidelity, will help you with his cool, dispassionate knowledge of men and of business.”<sup>1</sup>

✓ Pestalozzi had joined the *Helvetian Society*, founded by Bodmer in order to propagate liberal ideas among young men. The weekly meetings of this society were devoted chiefly to debates, in which Rousseau’s political ideas had the chief share. These meetings naturally came to be regarded with suspicion by the authorities, for the “patriots,” as they called themselves, did not hesitate to denounce the abuses of power of which many officials had been guilty.✓

✓ In a journal founded by the society in 1765, for the discussion of moral questions, *Der Erinnerer*, to which Pestalozzi, then hardly twenty years of age, contributed, we find the first traces of his vocation for an educational career.✓ “A young man,” he says, “who plays such a small part in his country as I do, has no right to criticise, or to suggest improvements; people tell me so nearly every day of my life. But surely I may be permitted to express my wishes? . . .” And among these wishes the chief is, “that no eminent man may deem it beneath him to work with untiring courage for the general good, that no one may look down with disdain on his fellow-creatures of an inferior rank, if they are among the most faithful and industrious of men.” Later on he expresses the wish “that some one might publish a little collection of the principles of education, excellent and simple, so that the average citizen, or the average country-

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 163.

man, might understand them, and that some generous persons might distribute this little book free of charge, or for the sum of a schilling (a half-penny), that all the clergy, both in the towns and in the country, might distribute and recommend it, and finally that all the parents who read it might conform to these wise rules of Christian education. . . ." But he adds, "it is a good deal to wish at a time!"

✓ The relations of Pestalozzi with the *Helvetian Society* had most unpleasant consequences for him. One member of the society, Müller, a young theologian, had fled, to escape the actions which the Mayor of Zürich had decided to take against him on account of the publication of a political article. Pestalozzi was accused of having advised him to flee, and was arrested together with several others. As his guilt was not actually proved, he was only condemned to pay the costs of the action. His hatred of tyranny was naturally only increased by this, and from that moment he was considered as a demagogue by the authorities. As to the journal of society, they took the opportunity of suppressing it.

Deeply affected by the death of his friend Bluntschli, — indeed he himself was made seriously ill by his grief, — Pestalozzi suddenly renounced literature, or, as he says, *bookish things* (*Büchersachen*), and resolved to devote himself to agriculture. Love of nature was then the order of the day, and Rousseau, not content with converting his contemporaries by his writings, was exerting himself, as occasion offered, to carry them away by his eloquence. Bodmer tells us that one day, on his way to Geneva, the author of *Émile* received the visit of one of the Swiss "patriots,"

Schulthess, and praised to him the condition of the tiller of the soil as the happiest of all. "In the country of slavery," he said, "one should be an artisan; in the country of liberty, one should become a farmer. A farmer can lead a peaceful life at home and cultivate the tender sentiments of the heart." And he told him how "there was in Italy an association of peasants whose statutes contained as their first article that not one of them should be able to read."<sup>1</sup> Such inducements were not even necessary to convince young men already influenced by the writings of physiocrats (notably by the *Peasant Philosopher* of Hirzel),<sup>2</sup> and to bring this passion for nature to the point of manifesting itself in action. "It is astonishing," writes Bodmer, "how several of our best students have taken it into their heads to become farmers. They have already begun their apprenticeship by helping peasants reap, in order to see if they could endure heat, perspiration, rain. . . ."

Not less enthusiastic, Pestalozzi went, on Lavater's recommendation, to study agriculture under Tschiffeli, a rural proprietor of Kirchberg, in the Bernese Emmenthal. Tschiffeli had a most prosperous farm, the success of which had gained for him a great reputation. He arrived there in the course of the autumn of 1767, and was delighted from the very beginning. "Here I am," he writes at once, "and my happiness exceeds all expectation. Tschiffeli is the best of fathers, the greatest of farmers. I am going to learn farming in all its branches, and shall certainly become independent of the whole world." And a little later:

<sup>1</sup> Letter to Sulzer, 1765. (Morf, vol. 1, p. 84.)

<sup>2</sup> *Die Wirtschaft eines philosophischen Bauern*, 1761.

"I have now a lucrative career. Tschiffeli is really growing rich with his farm. I am learning the business thoroughly, and am sure I shall be able to set up for myself."

These letters, so full of promise, were written to the sister of one of his friends, Anna Schulthess, the daughter of a respected Zürich merchant. He had made her acquaintance and come to honour her noble sentiments on the occasion of the death of Bluntschli, who was a great friend of hers. From this time Pestalozzi had carried on a regular correspondence with her; and although she was seven years older than he was, he resolved to unite his existence to hers. She was no less desirous of this, for Pestalozzi's exterior, which was rather unpleasant than otherwise, had not prevented her from appreciating the greatness of his soul. "Be sure," she wrote, "that you would owe little gratitude to Nature, if she had not given you your great black eyes, through which shine the goodness of your heart, the greatness of your mind, and the depth of your love."<sup>1</sup>

However, Anna's parents were far from sharing her enthusiasm, for young Pestalozzi's agricultural projects inspired them with but small confidence, and they had not the smallest intention of giving him their daughter on the strength of such shadowy hopes for the future. Nevertheless, the young farmer filled his letters to overflowing with details of the organisation he was planning and the profits which he hoped to make. He took the greatest pains to prove to his future helpmate that this farm would bring in sufficient "to support a family willing to live in a humble

<sup>1</sup> Morf, vol. 1, p. 101.



way in the country." He was even convinced, as was Tschiffeli his master, that he had found the means, "not only of assuring the existence of his family, but also of attaining a happy lot by his own exertions." And he added, "If only my plan please you, if only it can reassure you and your worthy parents, how happy I should then be!"<sup>1</sup> After having spent a year at Kirchberg, he returned to Zürich, and bought, with what remained to him of his paternal inheritance, a piece of uncultivated land in the plain of Birrfeld, in the canton of Argovie, where he intended raising madder and vegetables on a large scale. He had succeeded in interesting the father of one of his friends, banker Schulthess, in his enterprise, and induced him to put fifteen hundred florins into the concern. Then, until he should be able to build a house on his land, he took up his abode at Mülingen, a little village on the Reuss, three-quarters of an hour's walk from his farm.

Still Anna's parents, especially her mother, continued to turn a deaf ear to his projects. Even the intervention of such friends as Lavater, Füssli, Hotz, and Heidegger, the burgomaster of Zürich, failed to prevail on them to give their consent. All these could obtain was, that the parents should not oppose the union of the young people by force. They let their daughter go without any other dowry than her marriage outfit, her harpsichord, and her money box. "You will have to content yourself with bread and water," said her mother to her, as she left. The marriage took place on the 30th of September, 1769, in the church at Gebistorf, only a few friends being

<sup>1</sup> Morf, vol. 1, p. 105.

present. Pestalozzi was twenty-three years of age, his wife thirty.

The displeasure of the parents was luckily not of long duration, for, three months after the marriage, they received the visit of the young couple "most amiably," and the mother even returned it shortly after. But it was not long before their fears as to Pestalozzi's enterprise were justified. On the 25th of April, 1769, the banker Schulthess went to Mülingen with his two sons to see how the affair was getting on. The result of his visit was the cancelling of the deed of partnership, of which he sent him notice on the 17th of May, "because," he said, "he considered the enterprise a failure." Pestalozzi and his wife were overwhelmed. Pestalozzi went to Zürich and, thanks to the intervention of some friends, he succeeded in obtaining a delay from his partner, but not in completely dispelling his distrust. At last, after weary waiting, in October, a new arrangement was concluded between the two partners, and peace and some hope thereby restored to the young couple, who were rejoicing at the birth of a son.

## CHAPTER II

### NEUHOF (1771-1798)

- I. THE HOME FOR POOR CHILDREN (1771-1780). — The settling at Neuhof. — New difficulties. — Foundation of a Home for poor children. — Education and industrial occupation. — Pestalozzi's hardships. — Closure of the Home.
- II. PERIOD OF LITERARY ACTIVITY (1780-1798). — Pestalozzi's first writings. — *Leonard and Gertrude*. — Importance of this work in making Pestalozzi known to the public. — He is made a citizen of France. — Relations with Nicolovius, Klopstock, Wieland, Goethe, Herder, and Jacobi. — Fichte's visit.

### I

IN the spring of 1771 Pestalozzi established himself and his family in his new house, which he called Neuhof. The house was only built as far as the first story, and was never completed.<sup>1</sup> The cost of building had necessarily diminished the capital intended to be used in the working of the farm, which, moreover, succeeded less than ever. Schulthess, the banker, sent two competent men<sup>2</sup> to inspect the condition of the enterprise on the spot and report to him. Although both of them were friends of Pestalozzi, they could not do otherwise than recognise his want of foresight and

<sup>1</sup> This building was destroyed by fire in 1858 and the space between the four walls was occupied by a mill worked by steam, to which was added a saw-mill. Beside it is the pretty country house begun by Pestalozzi, in which he wished to found his Home.

<sup>2</sup> Maïss and Schinz.

his incapacity, to which the very choice of the ground bore witness. He himself confessed later on, in speaking of this visit, "that the greater part of the land, which had hardly been ploughed at all for many years, was almost like the soil of a stone-quarry, without a trace of mould, and even on the ploughed land, after a few days' rain, there was nothing to be seen but a number of little white limestones, which covered the ground. They were astonished at the imprudence of my purchase, and still more at the expensive and unsuitable plan of the dwelling house which I had begun, and certainly as far as that was concerned they were perfectly right."<sup>1</sup> On their report Schulthess withdrew definitely from the concern, with a loss of five thousand florins.

Far from being cast down, Pestalozzi resolved to continue with his own unaided resources. At first he tried to improve his land by the use of marl. Unfortunately he had none of the qualities necessary to an undertaking of this kind. "A man who contemplates and measures the stars," writes his friend Schinz, "who gives himself up to the most profound speculation, who has the best and finest feelings, but who has not a mind for any of the details of human life, or for domestic necessities, who, in his thoughts at the stars, stumbles into a quagmire at his feet, who can neither talk to nor act with any of his fellow-creatures without offending them by his unpleasant exterior and his uncouth, disorderly ways — how could such a man ever hope to be able to get on in actual life? The madder plantation did not succeed at all; Tschiffeli gained nothing by it, and Pestalozzi, his pupil, lost a great

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 164.

deal. He could not keep accounts, because he did not choose to submit to the minute details of bookkeeping, and only troubled himself as to the general result." This witness is confirmed by Mörikofer, who wrote on the 3d of May, 1773, "Pestalozzi carries a very heavy burden; he has no method in anything." ✓

Overwhelmed with debts, he made the state of his affairs worse by adding a spinning-mill to his farm. His brothers-in-law furnished him with part of the first materials for this. One of these, Heinrich Schultess, was soon to see that he had no more of the qualities necessary to succeed in an industrial undertaking than in agriculture. "He lacks order, skill, and patience, and cannot work a step at a time. He will have to give up commerce and manufacture, unless he is to be a source of torment and shame to himself and our family." He himself said later on, "The cause of the failure of my undertaking had nothing to do with the undertaking itself; it lay essentially and exclusively in me and in my decided incapacity for every kind of undertaking, for which essentially practical qualities are necessary."<sup>1</sup> At the end of a short time Pestalozzi's debts reached the sum of fifteen thousand florins, and it was only owing to the generosity of his brothers-in-law, who gave up their share of the inheritance, that he escaped complete ruin. Nevertheless his farm still remained incumbered with debts to the amount of four thousand florins. ✕

"The dream of my life, the hopes of a great and beneficent sphere of action, of which a peaceful, quiet, domestic life should be the centre, had now completely vanished."<sup>2</sup> All these difficulties did not prevent

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 164.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*

Pestalozzi from devoting himself to the education of his son Jacob. From the beginning of 1774 he kept a very regular diary, in which we already see in application the essential principles of the great rediscoverer of the method of sense-perception.<sup>1</sup>

Pestalozzi then conceived the project of founding, with the help of public subscription, a home for poor children. Orphans or foundlings were at that time handed over to peasants, who mostly got as much as they could out of the work, without troubling themselves about the education, of the children, and often enough compelled them to beg on the high-ways. Seized by the idea that "it is exceedingly difficult to give the poor and lower classes a simple education in accordance with nature, where the education of all those who are not poor or in need is unnatural and artificial to a high degree,"<sup>2</sup> he resolved to gather together poor children, and while making them work in the spinning-mill for their keep, to give them an education suitable to their condition, and prepare them for an active and useful life by preserving them from misery and moral corruption. He considered that the true means of helping these unfortunate children was not to give them alms out of pity or commiseration, "but to call forth, and put into action, the power every human being possesses of satisfying his needs and doing his duty in his state of life."<sup>3</sup> Consequently education was the first consideration in his plan.

At a time when philanthropic ideas were so common, such a design might fail to attract attention.

<sup>1</sup> *Vide* p. 39.

<sup>3</sup> *Bitte an Menschenfreunde*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 165.

Thanks to the active help of friends convinced of the utility of the scheme, such as pastor Schinz of Zürich, Lavater, Füssli, some rich inhabitants of Basle and of Berne, and above all the philanthrope Iselin (the disciple of the political economist Quesnay, and Rousseau), at that time registrar at Basle, whose passion for the social weal and for popular education made him naturally enough a protector of Pestalozzi's, the latter not only gained on all sides numerous adherents, but also large subscriptions flowed in, and a sum of money was offered as a loan without interest.

The members of his family were less enthusiastic, although he pointed out that by this means, too, he could improve his position. His brother-in-law, Kaspar Schulthess, then pastor at Neufchâtel, even conjured him to give up his "ill-digested" plan of bringing up poor children, when he had enough to do "to bring up himself and his own children."

With the subscriptions he had received, Pestalozzi could open his house, toward the end of 1774, to some fifty poor, abandoned children, some of whom he had himself picked up in the streets. The work was placed under the supervision of Müller, the bailiff of Marnen. Pestalozzi neglected nothing that could develop the faculties of these unfortunate children, and tried to give them an intellectual, a moral, and a religious education. He had them taught not only a handicraft, but also reading, writing, and arithmetic, and tried to influence them morally by edifying discourses. Unfortunately, most of the children were already too much tainted with vice to be able to profit by this beneficent direction. Some of them even were already so much accustomed to beggary and a vaga-

bond life, that they could not help detesting beforehand the kind of culture which Pestalozzi wished to give them. "They considered the condition they were in with me as a kind of humiliation compared to that in which they were before. Every Sunday, my house was filled with mothers or relations of such children, who found that their condition did not at all come up to their expectations."<sup>1</sup> It even happened that they were fetched at night "in their Sunday clothes" and taken home unknown to their benefactor.

"Nevertheless," Pestalozzi tells us, "these difficulties might gradually have been more or less overcome, if I had not tried to carry on my experiment on a scale quite out of proportion with my capacities. I had no knowledge of mankind, of business or of factories. My ignorance of all was as great as my need of knowledge. . . ." <sup>2</sup> He made, moreover, the mistake of adding to his spinning-mill a trade in cotton tissues, which did not succeed any better. The establishment was soon a failure, and the deficit was such that Pestalozzi was unable to meet his engagements.

In his distress Pestalozzi sent to Iselin, with the request to publish in his *Ephemerides* <sup>3</sup> an "Appeal to Philanthropists," <sup>4</sup> to invite them to support his work. In this address he undertook, in case of negligence on his part, to return all subscriptions, and promised to furnish an annual report on the progress of the undertaking. While recognising his faults, by which he

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 166.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>3</sup> *Ephemeriden der Menschheit* (1776-1778, 1780-1782).

<sup>4</sup> *Bitte an Menschenfreunde und Gönner zu gütiger Unterstützung einer Anstalt, armen Kindern auf einem Landhause Aufzuehung und Arbeit zu geben*, 1777.



was the first to suffer, he adjured philanthropists to continue to give him their confidence, and to save from imminent ruin an undertaking which, in spite of its faults, had succeeded and might have happy results. This address was soon after followed by a series of letters in which Pestalozzi laid down his ideas on the education of the poor.<sup>1</sup> After three years' experience, he was delighted to note the fact that not only had industrial labour in his school not injured the physical development of the children, but that many of those who had not thriven in idleness, had developed wonderfully after having been put to work at the mill. He intended besides to combine work with physical exercise and strengthening games, and accustom the children as far as possible to work on the farm, and at gardening.

Unfortunately he met with great difficulties. The children, accustomed to mendicity, found it hard to work, and necessitated heavy expenses before they could earn money. Pestalozzi had hoped to reimburse himself by keeping them a long time, but there again he experienced nothing but disappointment, and was deeply hurt by the ingratitude of the families. "The severity one is obliged to employ against the idleness and the bad behaviour of some of the children," says he, "is wrongly interpreted. . . . When the mothers or relatives see the children in the workshop, they often assume an insulting attitude toward me. I do not know what they expect, or demand, or what they think. 'My poor child, must you work like that all day long? Would you not rather come home? Have you enough to eat? Is the food

<sup>1</sup> *Ephemeriden*, etc., April and September, 1777.

well cooked? Would you not rather come home?' Then the child, who did nothing at all as long as he lived with his mamma, begins to cry, and his mother, seeing he can now earn a little and that he has good clothes on, persuades him to come home, and, to justify her conduct, speaks ill of the institute." As to the morality of the children, it was deplorable; there was no other means of improving it a little than religion.

Pestalozzi recognised, moreover, that to direct such an institute, it was necessary to have a good knowledge of industry and commerce. Nevertheless, he does not lose courage. He will not even have people continue to point out all the difficulties which must be inherent in every important scheme for the good of humanity. "Even if there were still more than there are, and even if the remnant of strength which is left in me were less than it is, I should strive to my last breath toward this end. Experience has taught me how long and weary the road may be. But even if it were still longer and still more painful, my soul ardently desires to follow it, and I shall devote my life to the attainment of this final goal. . . . It gives me indescribable pleasure to see young children, boys and girls, formerly miserable little creatures, grow and develop, to see contentment depicted on their faces, to teach their hands to work, to raise their souls to their Creator, to see the tears of innocence in prayer shine in the eyes of beloved children, and to discern the glimmering of hope of sentiments and morals worthy of the young, in a degraded and abandoned race. / It is joy and happiness beyond description to see human beings, the image of their Almighty Creator, grow up in so many forms and with such different

gifts, and then perhaps to discover, where no one expected it, in the miserable and abandoned son of the poorest artisan, a great spirit, a genius to be saved. . . .”

The promised report on the progress of the institute, dated the 18th of September, 1777, appeared in May in the *Ephemerides*.<sup>1</sup> The inmates of the house then numbered fifty, thirty-six of whom were children. Pestalozzi reckoned on being able to increase this number in the following spring. While still complaining of the ingratitude of the relatives, he notes with joy that more and more interest is taken in his work, for the amount of the subscriptions received during the preceding year had reached the sum of sixty louis d’or.

A second report, drawn up in the spring of 1778 and published in June,<sup>2</sup> gives us interesting details of the interior organisation of the institute, which numbered, besides a sort of housekeeper, Madlon Spindler, “a foreman weaver, two workmen, one workwoman, and two spinning-hands, a man whose duty it was, besides attending to the winding, to teach the children to read and spell, two male and two female servants.” The profits were not in proportion to the expenses, for they all lived in a condition approaching misery. “For years,” he says, “I lived in the midst of fifty little beggars, sharing in my poverty my bread with them, living like a beggar myself in order to teach beggars to live like men.”<sup>3</sup>

Pestalozzi’s debts increased continuously. His wife

<sup>1</sup> *Bruchstück aus der Geschichte der niedrigsten Menschheit. Anrufung der Menschlichkeit zum Besten derselben.*

<sup>2</sup> *Zuverlässige Nachricht (Ephemeriden, Juni, 1778).*

<sup>3</sup> *Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, 1 Ausgabe, p. 3.

had already put almost all that remained of her money into the concern, and was now ill from anxiety. Consequently, in spite of his appeals to philanthropists, in spite of many proofs of sympathy from them, in spite of Iselin's devotion and constant efforts on his behalf, Pestalozzi was compelled at the beginning of 1780 to close the doors of his institute, and he was only saved from complete ruin by the help of some friends and by the touching goodness of his creditors.

## II

As was to be expected, there was no lack of voices in the public and even among Pestalozzi's friends to scoff at his failure. "Poor fellow," they said, "you are more incapable than the worst day-labourer of helping yourself, and yet you imagine you can help the lower classes."<sup>1</sup> Füssli, the bookseller, who was "almost the only person left with whom he could freely discuss his situation and obtain a little friendly sympathy," told him that his best friends did not scruple to say "that he would end his days in a hospital, if not in a lunatic asylum."<sup>2</sup> Only one did not desert him, Iselin, "his Iselin," he called him, "his father, his master, his support, his comfort"; he gave him back his faith in himself, and it was to the influence of Iselin and Füssli that Pestalozzi owed the first suggestion of writing books for the people.

Pestalozzi only saw in this new kind of work a means of improving his pecuniary situation, for no one had less than he the gift of writing. "I had so neglected

<sup>1</sup> *Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, I, 5.

<sup>2</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 166.

my mental culture, that I could hardly write a line without making mistakes.”<sup>1</sup>

He consented to write, as he would have consented “to make periwigs, if he could have thereby earnt bread for his wife and child.”

His two first attempts — *A Hermit's Evening*,<sup>2</sup> published in May, 1780, in the *Ephemerides*, and a treatise on a subject proposed by the Basle Society for the Promotion, etc., on the *Advisability of restricting the Luxury of the Citizens in a little State of which the Welfare depended on Commerce*,<sup>3</sup> which brought him in the first prize of thirty ducats, divided between him and Professor Meister, — passed unnoticed. Pestalozzi then tried to write some stories in the style of Marmontel's *Contes Moraux*, which he found one day on his table. He wrote five or six, but none of them satisfied him. The last, *Leonard and Gertrude*,<sup>4</sup> was the work to which he owes his fame. “This,” he tells us, “flowed from his pen and developed of itself, without his having the least plan of it in his mind, or even having thought of such a thing.”<sup>5</sup> The first part of this social romance, corrected by Iselin, appeared in 1781 in Berlin without the author's name, and was followed in 1783 by a French translation, likewise published in Berlin.<sup>6</sup> The three other parts appeared in 1783,

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 168.

<sup>2</sup> *Die Abendstunde eines Einsiedlers*, 1780.

<sup>3</sup> *Inwieweit ist es schicklich in einem kleinen Staate, dessen Wohls:and auf der Handelschaft beruht, dem Aufwand der Bürger Schranken zu setzen*, 1780.

<sup>4</sup> *Lienhard und Gertrud: ein Buch für das Volk*.

<sup>5</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 168.

<sup>6</sup> *Léonard et Gertrude, ou les Mœurs villageoises, telles qu'on les retrouve à la ville et à la cour. Histoire morale traduite de*

1785, and 1787 respectively. Meanwhile he published *Christopher and Elsa* (1782), a sort of commentary on the first part of *Leonard and Gertrude*, which was not a success, and a periodical entitled *Ein Schweizerblatt* (1782), in which at Iselin's advice he was to discuss "everything small or great which is good for domestic use." This ceased to appear at the end of a year. Then followed a treatise *On Legislation and Infanticide* (1783), on a discussion raised by a philanthropist; a collection of satirical fables and parables, entitled *Illustrations to my A B C Book or to the First Principles of my Philosophy* (i.e. *Leonard and Gertrude*), written about the same time, but not published until 1797.<sup>1</sup>

The success of *Leonard and Gertrude* in Germany as well as in Switzerland surpassed all expectation. The newspapers and almanacs of the time were full of the praises of this book, which contrasted strangely with the immoral romances of the time. The author, whose name had been revealed to the public by the *Ephemerides*, received welcome encouragement from all sides. The *ökonomische Gesellschaft* of Berne awarded him not only a sum of thirty ducats,<sup>2</sup> but also a gold medal worth twenty ducats, which Pestalozzi was unluckily forced to sell a few weeks after. Many important personages sent him their congratulations; Count von Zinzendorf, Chancellor of the Exchequer under the Emperor Joseph II, congratulated  
*l'allemand: Avec douze estampes dessinées et gravées par D. Chodowiecki, Berlin, 1783.*

<sup>1</sup> *Figuren zu meinem A B C Buch oder zu den Anfangsgründen meins Denkens.*

<sup>2</sup> See the correction of the error on this topic handed down to us by Pestalozzi's biographers, J. Guillaume, *Pestalozzi*, p. 51.

him especially on having dared to draw the attention of the nobility and middle classes to the moral and material needs of the rural population. "The different classes of society," he wrote, "are really so much strangers to one another and so isolated that one almost forgets that the lowest feeds the other two. Your projects and your attempts for the education of the poor, for the reclaiming of waifs and strays, and especially all that you claim for the instruction of the people, in a word, everything which ought to be the object of legal measures, will be of great importance to me, and I shall receive with great pleasure anything you may write to me on the subject."<sup>1</sup> This correspondence between the Austrian minister and the author of *Leonard and Gertrude* was continued up to 1790.

Pestalozzi had another interesting correspondence, occasioned by the publication of his book, with the Minister of the Grand Duke Leopold of Tuscany, Count von Hohenwart, who held out hopes to him of a post under his government, so that Pestalozzi might put his ideas in application. Unfortunately, when in 1790 Leopold succeeded his brother Joseph as Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, he did not fulfil these promises, and even left a memorial which Pestalozzi sent him unanswered.

It was during this period that Pestalozzi joined the German order of the Illuminated, a species of Freemasons, to which order he certainly still belonged in 1782. It ceased to exist in 1784. The fame of the author of *Leonard and Gertrude* spread even to France. The Legislative Assembly by a decree on the 26th of

<sup>1</sup> Letter dated from Vienna, April 26, 1784.

August, 1792, awarded to Pestalozzi, together with Washington, Schiller, Klopstock, and others, the title of citizen of France, and invited him to assist in the work of the French Revolution. At first Pestalozzi was inclined to go to Paris, but ere long, frightened no doubt at the turn which events were taking, and at the revolutionary propaganda which threatened to spread from France into other countries, he gave up this idea. But he embodied his political opinions in a manuscript entitled *Yes or No, Opinions expressed on the Political Opinions of European Humanity by a Free Man* (February, 1793), which, however, he did not dare to publish.<sup>1</sup>

In 1791 Pestalozzi made at Zürich the acquaintance of Nicolovius, who later became Councillor of the Prussian government and was charged with the direction of public instruction. Pestalozzi kept up an intimate correspondence with him for some time. In the course of the summer of 1792 he visited his sister at Leipzig, and there made the acquaintance of Klopstock, Wieland, Goethe, Herder, and Jacobi. Finally, in 1793, he received a visit from Fichte at Richtersweil, where he had gone to spend some months with his uncle, Hotze. Fichte, then settled at Zürich, had married a friend of Pestalozzi's wife. The visit cemented the friendship of the two men, Fichte having already conceived a great esteem for Pestalozzi, whose ideas on popular education he highly appre-

<sup>1</sup> This work was published for the first time in 1782 in Seyffarth's edition of the *Complete Works*, under the title *Essay on the Causes of the French Revolution*, from a copy made by Frau Niederer. The original manuscript was not discovered until later. (J. Guillaume, *op. cit.*, p. 104.)



ciated, and Fichte promised to do all he could to help to put them into execution. The *Discourses to the German Nation*<sup>1</sup> proved that the German philosopher did not forget his promise.

All these testimonials of sympathy did not, however, help Pestalozzi out of his miserable situation, nor provide him with the sphere of action which he so long ceased to have, for the application of his ideas. Since the closing of his Home, his farm had gone steadily downhill for lack of helpers and capital, in spite of the devotion of Elisabeth Näf, the model servant who had succeeded in restoring order and sometimes even comfort into his wretched abode. She was, if we are to believe Nicolovius, Pestalozzi's model for Gertrude.<sup>2</sup>

The last article which Pestalozzi published during his stay at Neuhof was a philosophic essay, entitled *My Investigations into the Course of Nature in the Development of the Human Race*,<sup>3</sup> already composed in 1793, but which did not appear until 1797. No notice was taken of this work to which Pestalozzi attached great importance; he was consequently deeply mortified.

After Iselin's death, in 1782, Pestalozzi had no friends who really took much interest in his welfare. We must, however, mention Felix Battier, a Basle merchant, who took Pestalozzi's son, Jacob, into his house to teach him his business. He likewise advised Pestalozzi to sell his farm, Neuhof, but Pestalozzi refused, for he still dreamed of realising his plans.

<sup>1</sup> *Reden an die deutsche Nation*, Berlin, 1808, pp. 292 et seq.

<sup>2</sup> J. Guillaume, *op. cit.*, p. 42.

<sup>3</sup> *Meine Nachforschungen über den Gang der Natur in der Entwicklung des Menschengeschlechtes*, 1797.

## CHAPTER III

### STANZ (1798-1799)

Pestalozzi's pedagogic vocation. — The support of Stapfer and Legrand. — Foundation of the orphanage at Stanz. — Pestalozzi's teaching. — Success of the work stopped by political events. — Pestalozzi's departure.

IN 1798, as an after consequence of the French Revolution, Switzerland became the "Helvetian Republic, one and indivisible," and Stapfer, the minister of arts and sciences, a distinguished philosopher and philologist, resolved to undertake the reform of elementary schools, at that time in a lamentable condition, especially in rural districts, and also to found training colleges for teachers. Pestalozzi thought the moment had come for the realisation of his dreams. Some friends of his, desiring to help him out of his pecuniary difficulties, offered him a political post, but he remembered the advice of his friend Bluntschli, and declined it, giving as his answer to "the man who then played the chief part in Switzerland," *i.e.* Stapfer, "who had promised him all his support in this career,"<sup>1</sup> *'I want to be a schoolmaster.'*" A short time after, on the 21st of May, 1798, Stapfer being away, he wrote to the minister of justice to offer him his services in view "of a sweeping reform of education and of the schools for the lower classes of the

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*, § 170.

people." He communicated his ideas and his projects to Legrand, one of the members of the Swiss Directory, who recognised, as he did, that "the culture of the people would attain its maximum of efficiency by the perfect education of a sufficiently great number of individuals, taken from the poorest classes, on condition that the children should not be raised above their station by this education, but should be thoroughly fitted for it."

On Stapfer's return, Pestalozzi submitted to him his plan of a school for poor children, similar to the one which he had described in *Leonard and Gertrude*. The Directory approved of this plan, and promised not only an annual contribution of three thousand francs, but also all facilities for the installation. But the difficulty of finding a suitable building delayed the execution of this project. Meanwhile the Directory, knowing Pestalozzi's devotion to the cause of liberty, charged him with the task of drawing up an address to the cantons which had not yet accepted the Constitution, and also intrusted to him the editorship of the *Helvetisches Volksblatt*, a newspaper started by the government.

As the little town of Stanz, capital of the canton of Nidwalden, had been burnt down by the troops of the Directory, in consequence of an insurrection, the government had to undertake the charge of more than five hundred children, either orphans or the children of needy parents, and determined, on the 5th of December, 1798, to found an orphanage under Pestalozzi's management and the supervision of Businger, a priest, and Truttmann, a government inspector. The new institute was installed in an annex of the

convent of the Clarisses in Stanz, and organised at once to receive eighty children, with a first grant of six thousand francs.

Full of enthusiasm, Pestalozzi betook himself on December 7th to Stanz. "I was glad to go," he writes. "My eager desire to put my hand at last to the work of realising the great dream of my life would have made me ascend the highest Alps, I could almost say would have made me begin without fire and water, if I were only allowed to begin." He met with very great material difficulties, but he did not let himself be cast down. On the 14th of January, 1799, the first children were admitted, but for lack of beds they had to spend the night at home, and returned covered with vermin. Obligated to do everything himself, having as his only helper a housekeeper and her daughter, Pestalozzi worked day and night, by turn director, teacher, nurse, and servant of the children confided to his care. Four weeks after, the institute numbered sixty-two pupils, although there were still only beds for fifty. In spite of the open hostility of the Roman Catholic population of Stanz, who considered Pestalozzi as a heretic and as the official of a foreign government besides, he left no stone unturned in order to win the affection of the children, to whom he devoted himself with a paternal care. As at Neuhof,—in conformity moreover with the plan he had submitted to the Directory,—he at first wanted to combine instruction properly so-called with manual labour; but he soon recognised that before there could be any question of that, "*elementary education* in study and in work must be imparted, each by itself and independently, and the peculiar

nature and needs of each be determined." He already considered manual labour more from the point of view of physical exercise, and as a preparation for earning a livelihood, than with regard to the actual present pecuniary profit which might be made by the work.

Similarly, his aim was less to teach reading and writing to the children than to develop their moral powers in as many directions, and as effectively as possible. That is why his general principle was to bring the knowledge of the most insignificant thing taught to perfection. He trained his pupils to become his helpers. He put a more advanced child between two less advanced, and made him teach them what he had learnt, for Pestalozzi desired to make every individual child capable of teaching others.

The teaching of morality, limited to the notions of right and duty, was above all practical, and founded, according to Pestalozzi's principle, on conceptions gained by the medium of *sense-perception*, i.e. he connected it with the actual experience of the child. He held no discourses, gave no didactic explanations, but seized all the occasions furnished by the daily life of the children. The whole secret of his success lay in the children's devotion to their master. "I knew no order, no method, no art, which was not founded on the natural results of the conviction the children had of my love for them."

"As I had," relates Pestalozzi, "to teach the children single-handed, without any help whatever, I learnt the art of teaching many at once, and as I had no other means than that of repeating aloud to them, and making them repeat what I had said after me, the idea naturally occurred to me of making them

draw, write, and work while they learnt. The confusion of the number of children repeating all at once conducted me to the necessity of making them repeat all together, in rhythm, and this speaking all together increased the impression of what was taught. The complete ignorance of everything made me long keep to the elements, and this conducted me to experiences on the increased inner power which is gained through the perfection of the first rudiments, and of the consequences of the feeling of completion and perfection, even at the lowest step. I realised, as I never had before, the connection of the elements of every branch of knowledge to its perfect outline, and felt, as I had never felt before, the immeasurable gaps which must always be created if these elements are left in a state of confusion or imperfection. The results gained by attention to this point surpassed my expectations. A consciousness of power quickly developed in the children, of powers of which they were hitherto unconscious, and especially a general sense of beauty and order. They were conscious of themselves; and the irksomeness which is generally felt in school disappeared like a ghost out of my schoolrooms; they wanted to do something, — they could do it, — they persevered, — finished and laughed; their mood was not the mood of learners, it was the mood of children who feel unknown forces awaken in them, and in consequence are in an elevated frame of mind.

“It was at Stanz that I felt how decisive were my experiences on the possibility of founding the education of the people on a psychological basis, of laying actual perceptions on its foundation, and tearing off the mask from the superficial verbosity X

of education as then given. I felt that I could solve the problem, to the satisfaction of the man who looked deeply and was possessed of strength without prejudice; but I could not yet prove what I knew well enough to the prejudiced herd, which like geese have been, from the time they crept out of their shell, fed in the kitchen and in the coop, and consequently have lost all power of swimming and of flying."

The Directory was informed of the success of the undertaking by the reports of Truttmann and Businger, who were loud in his praise. "It is astonishing," writes the former to Rengger, the minister, on the 11th of February, 1799, to see what this excellent man has done, and the great progress made in so short a time by the pupils, who are most eager to learn. There is no doubt the State will be recompensed in a very few years for the sacrifices it has made in this beneficent work." Businger again wrote to the Directory, "One can hardly believe one's eyes and ears when one sees and hears what he has attained in so short a time." And yet the very man who reported these results seemed not to understand Pestalozzi's idea. Truttmann, for instance, felt himself called upon to advise him to modify his institute after the model of the orphanage at Zürich, and as he could not prevail on him to do so, communicated to the minister his doubts as to the final success of the undertaking. And some months after, in November, 1799, Businger wrote, "Pestalozzi, the worthy citizen, undertook the management of this orphanage with the best of good will and with all possible energy, but his temper, embittered by much suffering, the weakness which is the result of his age, the manner in which he

neglects everything external, and other defects, contribute to the result, that this good work has from the beginning failed in its beneficent aim, and that every man of foresight would have wished to see Pestalozzi anywhere but here." He was not understood better by the children's families, for they only saw in him a needy man whose chief aim was to earn a livelihood for himself. Stäpfer, the minister, was almost the only one who did not judge him wrongly, and he continued to give Pestalozzi his support.

As the French had made Stanz their headquarters, and established a hospital in the orphanage building, the children who could be sent back to their parents were sent home; and most of the others quartered out in families; there only remained twenty-two out of the eighty pupils of the institute. "That was the reward of my work at Stanz," Pestalozzi writes sorrowfully, "work which perhaps no mortal man ever attempted on such a scale and under such circumstances."

Discouraged and exhausted, he was compelled to rest for a time, and went up to the mountains to try and recover his strength, his friend Zehender having invited him to stay at his house at Gurnigel. But Pestalozzi still clung to the hope of going back to Stanz.



## CHAPTER IV

### BURGDORF AND MÜNCHENBUCHSEE (1799-1805)

Pestalozzi's arrival at Burgdorf. — His teaching at the town school. — His first ideas of the *A B C of Sense-Perception* and first application of his method. — Favourable report of the scholastic commission. — Pestalozzi is appointed teacher. — Arrival of his first co-worker, Krüsi. — Krüsi's and Ramsauer's accounts of Pestalozzi's manner of teaching. — New colleagues, Tobler and Buss. — Support given by the *Society for the Promotion of Education* and by the government. — Foundation of the Burgdorf Institute. — Prosperity of the Institute. — Publication of *How Gertrude teaches her Children*, the first work in which the principles of the method were laid down. — Success of this work from the point of view of Pestalozzi's reputation. — Number of foreign visitors. — Official inspection and report of Dean Ith; the institute is declared a national establishment. — Reports of Soyaux of Berlin and Gruner of Saxony; details as to the application of the method at the institute. — Pestalozzi elected member of the *Consulta*. — His journey to Paris. — Interview with Bonaparte. — His disappointment. — Arrival of Muralt and Niederer. — Publication of elementary text-books. — Removal of the institute to Münchenbuchsee. — Pestalozzi and Fellenburg. — Pestalozzi's departure for Yverdon.

AFTER some weeks' rest at Gurnigel, Pestalozzi returned to Stanz, more determined than ever to carry out his idea. Stapfer, who always believed in his genius, communicated with the Directory, in a letter in which he eloquently recalled Pestalozzi's services and dwelt on his desire of continuing his experience

as a teacher in the schools at Burgdorf, which Professor Fischer, a disciple of Salzmann, the philanthropist, was then occupied in reorganising. "He asks," wrote Stapfer, "neither salary nor title; he merely asks for rooms free of charge in a government building."

The Executive of the Directory granted this request and gave Pestalozzi rooms in the castle at Burgdorf, with permission to teach in the local schools, and the promise of a quarterly sum of one hundred and sixty Swiss livres (ten louis d'or), if he succeeded, *i.e.* "if his work benefited the pupils and furthered the perfecting of his method."

Pestalozzi began his new duties in the tenants' school at Burgdorf. The schoolmaster, Samuel Dysli, bootmaker by trade, was to share his schoolroom and his pupils with him. But Pestalozzi's presence soon resulted in exciting Dysli's mistrust and jealousy and making Dysli only see in him a rival desirous of taking away his pupils. At his instigation, the parents united in declaring that they would not permit the new master to experiment any longer on their children. Pestalozzi was then authorised to teach in an elementary school conducted by a Fräulein Stähli.

Continuing at Burgdorf the experiments he had commenced at Stanz, he began to teach, as he says himself, empirically, with neither plan nor method. "I crowed," as he puts it, "my A B C every day from morning till night, put rows of syllables indefatigably together, filled whole exercise books with columns of them and columns of figures, and tried in every possible way to bring the rudiments of reading and arithmetic to their utmost simplicity, and into forms contrived

by the greatest psychological art to bring the child very gradually from the first step to the second, but then in uninterrupted continuity from the foundation of the absolutely comprehended second, quickly and surely to the third and fourth. But instead of the letters which I made the children in Stanz draw on their slates, I made these children draw angles, squares, lines, and curves. In the course of this work, there unfolded itself gradually in my mind the idea of the possibility of an A B C of sense-perception, to which I now attach great importance, and with the working out of which the whole extent of a general method of instruction stood complete, though still obscure, before my eyes." The exercise books of which he speaks were as a matter of fact the manuscripts of the books which he proposed to publish on the application of his elementary method, and were to be used in the teaching of reading and arithmetic.

As he could not resume his post at Stanz, in spite of his desire to do so and Stapfer's favourable report, for the orphanage had been reorganised and confided to the management of Businger, the priest, Pestalozzi again reverted to his original idea of starting an educational establishment at Neuhof. He also desired to publish his elementary books. Stapfer asked for and obtained an advance from the government of sixteen hundred livres (one hundred louis d'or), to help him in the realisation of this project, but material difficulties prevented him from establishing himself at Neuhof.

At the end of the scholastic year, in March, 1800, Pestalozzi received the visit of the Board of Education, which reported very favourably on his manner

of teaching. The report, addressed to Pestalozzi himself, remarked that in eight months he had not only taught children of five and six years of age to read perfectly, but that the best among them could already write and draw well, and had made a good beginning in arithmetic. Moreover, he had succeeded in awaking among all a taste for history, natural history, geography, geometry, etc., so that if their future masters only knew how to profit reasonably by this preparation, they would find their task singularly facilitated. But what in the eyes of the members of the Board still more distinguished Pestalozzi's method from other methods in use until then, was that it could "be applied at the earliest age at which instruction is given in the family circle, by every mother, every child that is a little older than the beginner, and even by every intelligent servant in the midst of her household avocations." As a reward for his services, Pestalozzi was appointed, in the following May, teacher of the second boys' school in Burgdorf.

It was about this time that Pestalozzi had the good fortune to find a valuable fellow-worker in Krüsi, a young teacher who had come from the canton of Appenzell in January at Fischer's invitation, with twenty-eight poor children, whom he was going to teach. These were boarded out in charitable families. Fischer died suddenly in May, 1800, and then Pestalozzi suggested to Krüsi that they should join their schools. He obtained permission from government to house both in the castle at Burgdorf. Krüsi gladly and gratefully accepted the partnership. An experience in teaching of six years' duration had developed qualities in this young master which his colleague did

not possess, but which he had the sense to recognise. "Pestalozzi," he tells us, "gave me a free hand, for he saw that as a teacher I possessed many qualities which he lacked. On the other hand, I conceived a high esteem for his views, his efforts, and his experiments. I was encouraged by the confidence he had in me and delighted at his affection for me, although at the same time I did not approve of many details of his method." And Krüsi gives us interesting particulars of Pestalozzi's manner of teaching. "He had, I was going to say, almost brazen lungs, and any one who had not, would have to give up all idea of speaking or rather shouting continuously as he did. Even if I had had such lungs myself, I should often have desired that he and his pupils, when reciting or answering in class, might have used more moderation and lowered their voices. There were other points on which I never could entirely agree with him. For example, he wanted to teach two subjects to a class at the same time; he tried especially to combine exercises in speaking with freehand drawing and writing. Now it seemed to me that undivided attention directed to one subject and one piece of work at a time would have been infinitely more profitable than such divided attention. But these differences, far from disturbing the harmony of our relations, often only contributed to throw more light on the subject, and to show up more clearly the advantages or disadvantages of this or that proceeding. However this may be, Pestalozzi did not conceal his joy at having at length found an assistant who tried to fathom his views and to attain the end he strove after."

We have also at this interesting period the testi-

mony of one of Krüsi's Appenzell pupils, Johann Ramsauer, then ten years of age. "I learnt nothing there in ordinary school fashion," he writes, "any more than the other pupils did; but Pestalozzi inspired enthusiasm, and his devotion, his love, his utter disregard of himself, his precarious and difficult situation, which even the children remarked, made a most deep impression on me, and knit my childish heart to his by bonds of eternal gratitude. . . . In this school, where the whole teaching according to Pestalozzi's ideas was to have as starting-point *language, number, and form*, there was no scheme of work properly so called and no time-table. Pestalozzi did not confine himself to any fixed hour, but generally kept on at the same subject for two or three hours at a time. There were about sixty of us, boys and girls from eight to fifteen years of age, and the school hours were from eight to eleven in the morning and from two to four in the afternoon. The whole teaching was reduced to drawing, arithmetic, and exercises in speaking. There was no reading or writing, consequently we had neither printed books nor exercise books. We learnt nothing by heart, neither the Bible nor anything else. As to drawing, we had neither copies nor were we told what we were to draw; we had nothing but a piece of red chalk and a slate, and while Pestalozzi recited to us, as exercise in speaking, sentences on natural history, we were to draw 'what we chose.' But we did not know what to draw, so that some of the children drew men and women, others houses, others lines, curves, or anything else that came into their heads. Besides Pestalozzi never looked at what we had drawn, or rather

scrawled. The condition of our clothes, especially of our cuffs and elbows, was a sufficient proof that we had been using red chalk. In order to learn to count, we had to every two pupils a little diagram pasted on cardboard, on which dots were arranged in squares. These we had to count, and by their help add, subtract, multiply, and divide. From these diagrams Krüsi and Buss afterward made tables of unity, and later on fraction tables. But as Pestalozzi contented himself with reciting aloud and making the pupils repeat after him, one at a time, without ever asking us any questions or giving us any sums to do, these exercises, excellent as they were in their way, had no great result. He was besides not patient enough to make the pupils repeat or to put questions to them, and in his boundless zeal he seemed not to trouble himself about any one child. The best part of his teaching consisted of exercises in speaking, those at least which he put us through on the designs of the wall-papers in the class room. These were real exercises in sense-perception. The wall-papers were very old and all torn, and we often had to stand in front of them for two or three hours at a time, to say what we saw in the figures and holes there, as regards *form*, *number*, *position*, and *colour*, and compose longer and longer sentences on what we saw. Thus he asked us:—

*Boys, what do you see?* (He never addressed himself to the girls.)

Answer, *A hole in the wall. A tear in the partition.*

Pestalozzi. *Very well. Repeat after me, I see a hole in the wall-paper.*

*I see a long hole in the wall-paper.*

*Behind the hole I see the wall.*

*Behind the long and narrow hole I see the wall.*

*Repeat again, I see the figures on the wall-paper.*

*I see black figures on the wall-paper.*

*I see round black figures on the wall-paper.*

*I see a square yellow figure on the wall-paper.*

*Beside the square yellow figure on the wall-paper I see a black round one.*

*The square figure is joined to the round one by a thick black line, etc.*

The exercises on natural history were less successful. While we were drawing on our slates in the manner I have already described, he made us repeat: —

*Amphibious animals. Amphibious animals which have paws.*

*Amphibious animals which climb.*

*Monkeys.*

*Tailed monkeys.*

*Tailless monkeys.*

We did not understand a single word, for he never explained anything to us, and he recited it all in a chanting fashion, so quickly and so indistinctly, that it would have been a miracle if we had understood any of it, or got any good at all out of it. Besides he shouted fearfully and perpetually, which prevented him from hearing what we repeated after him, the more so because he never stopped when he had finished one sentence, but recited a whole page in one breath. Everything he thus recited was written on a sheet of cardboard, and our share of the repetition was generally limited to repeating the last word or



syllable. There never was any attempt at questioning us, or making us repeat an exercise a second time.

“As Pestalozzi in his zeal never bound himself to fixed hours, we generally kept on till eleven o'clock at what we began at eight, and at ten o'clock he was generally hoarse and utterly exhausted. We knew when it was eleven o'clock because we heard the noise the other school children made in the streets, and then we all ran off without stopping to say good-bye.

“Although Pestalozzi strictly forbade his colleagues to use corporal punishment, he did not hesitate to resort to it himself, and boxed the boys' ears right and left. But most of his pupils made his life such a burden to him that I was sorry for him, and kept all the quieter. He soon noticed this, and often took me for a walk at eleven o'clock. Every fine day he went to hunt for stones, which was his chief diversion. I, too, had to pick up stones, although it seemed very singular to me, for there were millions of them, and I did not know which to take. He did not understand anything about them either, but he filled his pockets and his handkerchief with them every day all the same, and carried them home, though he never looked at them again after that. He kept this hobby all his life; and it was hard to find a handkerchief in the whole school at Burgdorf which was not full of holes made by taking pebbles home.”<sup>1</sup>

It was also in 1799, towards the end of the year, that Pestalozzi received the visit of Herbart, on his return from Märchlingen, where he had just spent

<sup>1</sup> Ramsauer, *Kurze Skizze meines pädagogischen Lebens*, 1838, pp. 7-10.

two years as tutor in the family of Von Steiger, who was bailiff there. This visit made a great impression on Herbart, who gives us the following account of it:<sup>1</sup>—

“A dozen children from five to eight years of age were summoned at an unusual hour of the evening to the school; I was afraid that they would be ill-tempered, and that the experiment I had come to see would be a failure. But the children came without a trace of reluctance; an animated activity lasted without interruption to the end.”

After having praised the exercises in answering all together, and admired the pupils' skill in drawing geometrical figures, Herbart adds:—

“But why did Pestalozzi cause so much to be learnt by heart? Why did he seem to have chosen the subjects of instruction with so little regard to the children's natural inclinations? Why did he always only make them *learn*, never converse with them, never talk, never joke, never tell them stories?—Why were his sentences so disconnected, why did the names he gave stand out so solitary?—Why did everything which is so often suggested to mitigate the seriousness of school here seem despised?—How did he, the man who was otherwise from the very beginning so friendly, so amiable, who greeted everything human in so human a fashion, whose first word seemed to say to every stranger: ‘Here let every one who deserves to find a heart find one’—how was it that such a man, I say, did not give more pleasure to, did not more combine the agreeable with the useful for, the children who occupied his whole soul?”

“These questions did not certainly puzzle me as much

<sup>1</sup>See *Pestalozziblätter*, p. 307.

as they would have puzzled others. My own experience and experiments had prepared me to estimate children's mental powers far more highly than people generally do, and to seek for the causes of their willingness or unwillingness to learn far from superfluous pastimes on the one hand, or supposed dryness and difficulty of such things which demand seriousness and attention on the other. I had often found that with children what was supposed to be easy was difficult, and what was supposed to be difficult was easy. I had long considered the feeling of clear grasp the only real condiment in instruction. And a perfect *regularity of progression* which should answer all the demands which could be made on it was for me the great ideal, in which I saw the all-penetrating means of ensuring its real efficacy. Just the very search for this systematic progression, this arranging and joining together what must be taught at the same time and what successively, was, as I understood, Pestalozzi's chief aim. If we assume that he has found it, or at any rate is on the right road to finding it, every non-essential addition, every assistance by circuitous routes, in the form of distraction, of diverting the mind from the chief object in view, must be harmful and to be deprecated. If on the other hand he has not found that true succession of steps to knowledge, it must be found or at any rate be improved upon and continued; but then too his method is at any rate so far correct, in that it throws away harmful additions; its laconic brevity is its essential merit. No useless word is heard in the school; consequently the continuity of grasp is never interrupted. The teacher speaks perpetually so that the children may repeat after him, a wrong letter is at once wiped

from the slate; thus the child can never stop at his errors. The right path is never forsaken; and thus every moment has its progress.

“And yet the committing to memory of names, sentences, definitions, and the apparent lack of concern as to whether it was all understood, caused me to doubt and to put questions. Pestalozzi answered by another question: ‘Would the children learn so quickly and so cheerfully if they understood nothing?’ I had seen this cheerfulness with my own eyes; I could not explain it if I did not assume the existence of a mental activity. But this assumption of mine was more belief than conviction. In further conversation, however, Pestalozzi led me to the idea that the inward comprehensibility of the instruction was after all much more important than the momentary understanding. Most of what was learnt by heart here had to do with objects of the daily sense-perception; the child, with his description in his mind, left the school, met with the object described, perceived it with his senses, and now perhaps for the first time comprehended the meaning of the words, but he comprehended them more completely than if the teacher had tried to explain his words by other words. Do then the happy moments of understanding and especially those of more concentrated thought, combination, and meditation come just in certain lesson hours? The lessons give the *comprehensible*, and put together those things which belong together; time and opportunity will later on bring comprehension, and join and cement what has been brought together.

“We must not forget that it was only a question here of *young* children. For such a word or a name is not,

as it is for us, the mere sign of a thing: for them the word is itself a thing; they stop at the sound; and not until that has become an everyday thing to them do they learn to forget it while thinking of the thing.”<sup>1</sup>

As the work increased it became necessary to look out for new helpers, especially as neither Pestalozzi nor Krüsi could teach singing or drawing. Krüsi went to Basle to visit his fellow-countryman and friend, Tobler. Tobler had been a teacher and was now a theological student and at the same time master of a school for poor children. He suggested as master for singing and drawing a young Württemberger book-binder, Buss by name, who had a taste for music and drawing. Buss gladly accepted, and “hastened to Pestalozzi without making any inquiries as to salary or other conditions.”<sup>2</sup> Tobler at first could not make up his mind to leave his school; but Krüsi urged him so strongly that he finally promised his help, and he arrived at Burgdorf a few weeks later. His duties were to help Pestalozzi in his literary work, teach geography, and direct the moral and religious education of the children. X

“Our staff consisted then of four persons, and was a curious mixture, the result of a singular combination of circumstances: a founder, who joined to his high reputation as author that of a visionary, of a man useless in practical life, and three young men, one of whom was a teacher, who after a neglected youth suddenly flung himself into university studies, and

<sup>1</sup> Herbart, *Über Pestalozzi's neueste Schrift: Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt.* (Complete Works, ed. by Rohrbach, Vol. I, pp. 137 et seq.)

<sup>2</sup> Krüsi, *Erinnerungen aus meinem pädagogischen Leben und Wirken*, 1840, p. 15.

devoted himself unsuccessfully to all sorts of experiments in teaching; another a bookbinder, who in his free hours tried to gratify his taste for drawing and singing; finally the third, a village schoolmaster, who followed his calling as well as he could, having had no preparation for it. Any one who saw this group of men, and remembered that not one of them had where to lay his head, could not be blamed for only expecting a meagre result from their efforts. And yet the work succeeded. The institute won the confidence of the public to a degree which surpassed the expectation of all who knew us, and above all it gained ours. On all sides from far and near pupils arrived by crowds.”<sup>1</sup>

At the beginning of June, at the initiative of Stapfer, the minister, a *Society of the Friends of Education* had been founded, the aim of which was to promote Pestalozzi's efforts, and make them known to the public. This society appointed a commission and sent it to Burgdorf to study the working of his method. Before setting out, however, the commission invited Pestalozzi to give an account of his principles and of his proceedings in an address to them. In this address Pestalozzi enunciated for the first time the principle of his method.<sup>2</sup> At the close of its visit, the commission drew up a very favourable report, which brought Pestalozzi a grant of five hundred francs from government, and caused him to determine to make an appeal to the public for help in his undertaking.

All this encouragement made Pestalozzi decide to resume his independence and found an institute of his

<sup>1</sup> Krüsi, *Erinnerungen aus meinem pädagogischen Leben und Wirken*, p. 15.

<sup>2</sup> This account of his method is reproduced almost literally in letters 4 and 5 of *How Gertrude teaches her Children*.

own. He sent in his resignation as village teacher, and on the 24th of October, 1800, advertised in the newspapers the opening of an educational establishment for pupils belonging to the middle classes. The government granted him the free use of the castle at Burgdorf for his school. The fee for board and tuition was fixed at from sixteen to twenty louis a year. Later on he meant to add an orphan asylum and a training college for teachers to this boarding school. X

Thanks to the help of the *Society of the Friends of Education*, which issued an appeal on November 20, "to the citizens (male and female) of Helvetia" for a subscription of thirty-two thousand francs, the sum necessary to start the undertaking, and also to some favourable notices which appeared in some important German newspapers, pupils came in rapidly, and soon the Burgdorf castle was not large enough to hold them all. Soon after this, Pestalozzi lost his son Jacob, who died at Neuhof on the 15th of August, 1801, after several months' illness.

The prosperity of the institute at length enabled Pestalozzi to begin to edit for the public the principles of his method, which he embodied in his book, *How Gertrude teaches her Children*. This appeared in October, 1801; but the first letter is dated the 1st of January previous to this. In spite of its title, the work is nothing more or less than a series of letters on education, the two first containing many biographical details. The series, fourteen in number, was addressed to Gessner, the bookseller.

The publication of this work gained for Pestalozzi a wider and more lasting fame. Visitors came in crowds from the whole of Switzerland and Germany,

to see for themselves the "method" in application. Dean Ith, who was sent by the government to inspect the establishment, drew up a most favourable report, on the strength of which the Helvetian government transformed Pestalozzi's establishment into a national institute, and awarded the head-master, as well as his elder colleagues, a fixed salary, and moreover paid part of the cost of the publication of the elementary books they compiled.

One of the visitors who came from abroad to see the institute, Soyaux of Berlin, has left us a most interesting portrait of Pestalozzi. "It was only necessary to see this man," he says, "to have the best opinion of him: he is always immersed in thought; he sees more in himself than outside himself; more in the world of his ideas than in the actual world. A spirit of unrest, an inner impulse, drives him on some days from one room to the other, from one colleague to another. One would then say he was in pursuit of an idea which always fled before him, and that he was devoting his whole mind to solving some complicated problem. . . . At other times he spends whole days in his room, where he passes his time in meditation and writing, wholly oblivious of himself and his affairs. To begin a conversation with him is easy enough, but it is seldom that one is able to fix him on one subject, and lead him to a satisfactory conclusion. He only breaks the thread of his meditations for a few minutes, says a kind word or two, and then draws back into his shell. When, however, one can direct his attention to well-grounded objections and doubts, he becomes lively and communicative. He speaks rapidly and to the point, in an energetic and decisive manner. Contradiction does



not irritate him, but has rarely any other effect than to fix him more firmly than ever in his own opinion.

“His heart is full of affection and friendship. He seems to prefer to communicate with his friends and pupils by a mute expression of his feelings than by ideas and words. A friendly tap, an energetic shake of the hand, a benevolent look, a sympathetic or grateful clasp of the hand, are more in accordance with his nature than wordy reflections or superficial remarks. . . . He recoils from no sacrifice if the aim is good and noble. He carries his oblivion of the interests of himself and his family too far, for he takes in too many children free of charge.

“The firmness and independence of his mind manifest themselves also in his exterior. He cannot plume himself on social breeding. He expresses his thoughts and convictions, his feelings and desires, in a clear and original manner. Unaccustomed to the forms of European society, he abandons himself to the natural impulses of his mind and heart. He is quiet, sincere, earnest, hearty, modestly firm, lively without being carried away by sensual impulses, attentive from force of sympathy, but lacking refinement, without any trace of outside influence in his words or actions. As he has not been educated by men, he does not know how to exert an active influence on them. He is a thinker rather than an educator.” On the subject of the practical part of Pestalozzi’s teaching, Soyaux remarks that “his principles are still in germ and are rather at the stage of projects than of maturity and completion.” Nor must one expect perfect organisation. Soyaux admires the spirit of concord and the love of progress which inspires all the members of the institute.

The establishment then included one hundred and two persons, seventy-two being pupils of from five to thirteen years of age, ten masters, and several foreigners who had come to learn the method. There were no classes properly so called, but the pupils were divided into five or six groups, which were differently constituted according to the needs of their studies. There were no books for the beginners, except the A B C for the children who were learning to read. Diagrams hung in all the class rooms. "The smallest children learn to count by the help of pebbles, leaves, trees, etc., and to draw lines on their slates. Others count the lines on the first diagram and learn to add and subtract by their help. In the first lessons, the master repeats aloud, and makes the pupils repeat after him, this exercise of the method, word for word, pointing to the diagram, until they perfectly comprehend what they are to do; then they follow his example, *i.e.* each one in turns takes the master's place and teaches the others just as he did. Thus the pupil learns and teaches at the same time. These arithmetic lessons are continued according to fixed and rigorous rules; the master has only to see that there are no gaps in continuity and no confusion. The more advanced pupils are occupied at the same time with other diagrams. Then follow some examples of sums on fractions worked mentally by pupils of eight and nine years of age."

Soyaux goes on to give us the description of the teaching of drawing, and the teaching to speak by the help of the A B C of sense-perception, and especially draws attention to the ease with which the pupils drew geometrical figures, and even maps on a reduced

scale, most accurately without the help of any instrument.

Here again are other interesting details on the life led in the establishment. "At six o'clock in the morning all the house is astir, and at the stroke of ten at night the children are assembled in the hall. Pestalozzi stands in their midst and holds a paternal moral review. But, as he likes to have no witnesses at such a time, I have not dared to gratify my wish to be present at his expense." The physical and moral health of the children is perfect. "They have no highly seasoned food to excite their palates, nothing to enervate their bodies, to intoxicate their senses, to cramp their hearts, nor to corrupt their morals. Separated from the world, kept in constant activity and always under the supervision of their masters, they give themselves up to their childish innocence and their natural light-heartedness. Their daily occupations take such possession of their minds that they do not think of anything but . . . drawing and arithmetic. Even on Sundays they come together of their own accord in the class rooms to do sums, either alone or in groups together. How many times I have seen children enthusiastically reciting to themselves their tables of sense-perception! . . .

/"As to discipline, the ruling principle is to leave the children the greatest liberty possible, and only to prevent abuses. Nowhere does the restrictive force of a rule make itself felt. Masters and pupils are as simple and natural in their manner as isolated inhabitants of mountains. They know nothing of acquired politeness, of refined manners, of sounding phrases, of the usages of society. The children obey their natural

Beant  
M

X

✓

impulses in all their freshness and simplicity; they are not in the least self-conscious. While enjoying the most complete liberty, they nevertheless keep within certain rightful limits; obstinacy, unkind teasing, love of quarrelling, etc., are extremely rare among them. Ever since the foundation of the institute there has been no need of punishment. There is no trace of bigotry, nor of the pedantic manner so repugnant in schoolmasters. Pestalozzi's principles as regards moral education are excellent. 'Try to retain the natural living warmth in the heart of the young, for it is in this natural warmth and not in the glimmer of the lamp of moral reflections that the germs of good develop; . . . put yourself in such relations with the child that he may love you and have full confidence in you.' . . .

"Thus masters and pupils live in a beneficent harmony. . . . The masters do not dream of making their authority felt by commands or reproofs; they utter their prohibitions in a gentle warning tone; their praise is reduced to . . . a pleased look, a clasp of the hand. The children for their part are attached to their guides and have a hearty confidence in them, and are never wanting in the respect which the masters command by their intelligence, their even temper, and their good intentions. It is always difficult to keep to the golden mean. That is the case here too. The children are, as a matter of fact, too little restricted. There are hardly any rules at all. During lessons they can sit or stand as they choose, and take whatever places they like. . . . Naturally, with the high spirits of their years, they resemble a group of persons pushing and shoving to get the best

place more than a class of pupils who desire to learn, among whom there ought to be a certain order, if the aim proposed is to be attained. However, the peculiar character of this method puts certain limits to the confusion, by calling all their liveliness into play in the lesson, and by taking complete possession of all the pupils' energies at once. For they do not answer one at a time, each according to his capacity, but all together. This may have its good points, but the shouting which the children take such pleasure in ought not to be allowed. I have been sometimes actually put to flight by the deafening noise made when several classes recited at the same time. The excessive exhaustion which is the result cannot be good for the voice; the ear gets accustomed to the clamour, and finally the boy cannot speak at all without shouting." But all that contributed to keep up the children's interest and pleasure, so that study seemed to them a recreation rather than mental fatigue.

Another visitor, this time from Saxony, Gruner, has left us a touching description of these gatherings, or "moral reviews," at which Soyaux did not venture to be present. All the pupils except the very youngest were present at these gatherings, which took place mornings and evenings. There were no formal ceremonies, "they exercised the attraction and action by heat and energy." . . . "A small number of pupils, about six or eight perhaps, joyfully shook off their drowsiness early in the morning to be with Father Pestalozzi. How many times I have seen this little group wait quietly and confidingly, often in the dark (in winter a little after six o'clock), for their teacher, their adopted father and friend! Never did I remark

among them at such a time any outbursts of youthful agility. One would have said that the reason for which they were gathered together so early in the hall, and the expectation of what Father Pestalozzi was going to say to them, had given them the gravity of serious young men. They talked together quietly and confidentially.

“But here is Pestalozzi coming in with a light. What benevolence and what cordiality shine in his face, and how they are expressed in his fatherly good morning! He shakes hands with this child and that, he speaks to each one according to his character. Sometimes he addresses them all together. In a familiar tone and with fatherly interest he questions each one about himself, about his health, if he is not quite well, on the progress he has made in such and such an exercise which he finds difficult, or about some talent which his parents wish to be specially cultivated. He reminds the children of their parents, and begs them to try to please them. Often he proceeds from remarks specially addressed to one pupil to exhortations addressed to all, appealing from the particular case to the moral and religious sentiments which Nature has put in the heart of all. . . .

“Sometimes he praises a pupil for good conduct, for manifestations of his good heart and noble sentiments. He encourages another to imitate him, reminding him that he, too, has faculties for good, which he ought to exercise. He exhorts a third to be grateful to his Creator for having given him a good capacity for learning, and begs him never to forget the duty which is obligatory on him, of making something important out of his life. He addresses himself some-

times to a fourth, to reprove him in an energetic, fatherly fashion, if repeated complaints have been made to him, or if he, who knew so well how to read children's minds, saw in his germs which caused him anxiety. From time to time he interspersed a joke. But in all his remarks, however varied they may be, there is the same tone throughout of hearty fatherly warmth. That is why it all comes home to the children as a body and also to each particular one. . . .

"Pestalozzi then proceeds from particular objects to general reflections, and never fails to choose topics which appeal to the children's hearts. Almost always his language is singularly lucid and clear. However, it sometimes happens that he is carried away to discuss abstract ideas and obscure subjects, less within the range of all, or considerations which do not directly appeal to the feelings. As soon as he perceives this, he breaks off and passes on to the reading.

"At the end of morning prayers, Pestalozzi begs his pupils to meditate often during the day on what he has said to them, and to let their meditation influence their actions. In the evening, he generally begins by asking the pupils how they have kept the resolutions made in the morning. And then it is by no means rare to see how open and sincere children are when treated in a manner perfectly in accordance with their nature."<sup>1</sup>

Pestalozzi was elected in November, 1808, member for the cantons of Berne and Zürich on the Swiss delegation or *Consulta*, which was convoked by Bonaparte to meet at Paris and deliberate on the new Helvetian constitution. Pestalozzi had hoped that his journey would help to make his method known in France.

<sup>1</sup> Gruner, *Briefe aus Burgdorf*, pp. 259 et seq.

But although Chaptal, the minister, had been apprised of his efforts, Pestalozzi met with nothing but indifference. It is even said that he tried to obtain an audience from the First Consul, and that Bonaparte replied, "*He could not trouble himself about the A B C.*" Worse still, the *Journal de Paris* treated him as a quack. Much discouraged, he returned to Burgdorf without waiting for the end of the work of the *Consulta*. "I, too, have been to Paris," he said later on, "but I saw nothing there." The only good result of his journey was to gain for his work Johann von Muralt of Zürich, a very distinguished young theologian, whom he had met at Paris and so attracted that Muralt refused the offer of a post as tutor from Mme. de Staël to become Pestalozzi's colleague at Burgdorf, in May, 1803. The same year other new masters entered the institute, among them Johann Niederer, an ardent admirer of Pestalozzi's, who after three years' hesitation gave up his ministrations as pastor at Sennwald, in the canton of Appenzell, to place himself at Pestalozzi's disposal. The same year, too, appeared Pestalozzi's elementary works, *i.e.* (1) *The A B C of Sense-perception, or the Teaching of Geometry by the Help of Sense-perception*;<sup>1</sup> (2) *The Teaching of Arithmetic by Sense-perception*;<sup>2</sup> (3) *The Book for Mothers*.<sup>3</sup>

As the new government of Berne required the castle at Burgdorf for the new prefect, Pestalozzi, who was moreover regarded with suspicion by the authorities on

<sup>1</sup> *A B C der Anschauung oder Anschauungslehre der Maszverhältnisse.*

<sup>2</sup> *Anschauungslehre der Zahlverhältnisse.*

<sup>3</sup> *Buch der Mütter, oder Anleitung für Mütter, ihre Kinder bemerken und reden zu lassen.*



X account of his radical ideas, was invited to transfer his institute to Münchenbuchsee, two leagues from Berne, to the old Johanniter monastery there. This building was, however, only granted him for the space of one year. The grants made him were withdrawn and repayment demanded of the four thousand francs advanced for the publication of his elementary books. Thanks to the generosity of the governments of several other cantons, Pestalozzi only had to repay fourteen hundred francs. On all sides, too, people declared that his institute ought to be kept up, if it were only on account of the enthusiasm excited by it throughout all Europe. At the news that he would have to leave Burgdorf, several towns, Yverdon among them, made him most advantageous offers to induce him to transfer his establishment to their territory. As he could not count on retaining the castle at Münchenbuchsee for long, Pestalozzi let himself be tempted by the position of Yverdon, on the border of the lake of Neufchâtel, for he hoped to be able to spread his ideas into French-speaking districts. As, on the other hand, the number of masters whom he had trained in his method was greater than he needed, he conceived the plan of establishing there a second institute, to which he promised to devote his energies at least six months in the year. He went there toward the middle of August. The municipality gave a banquet to celebrate his arrival and promised to make all alterations necessary in the castle. The week following, Buss brought six or eight pupils from Münchenbuchsee, who were to form the nucleus of the institute at Yverdon. Pestalozzi's family had been sent to Neuhof during these changes.

While these negotiations were pending, the installation of the institution at Münchenbuchsee took place, on the 22nd of June, 1804. A quarter of an hour's journey from Münchenbuchsee was the important agricultural establishment of Hofwyl, which contained no fewer than four hundred persons, under the able management of Fellenberg, with whom Pestalozzi was on friendly terms. Some of Pestalozzi's colleagues, among them Muralt and Tobler, who had already thought of relieving him of the material part of the management, secretly entered into negotiations with Fellenberg, and found him quite ready to fall in with their views and take over the management of the institute at Münchenbuchsee. They then submitted the plan to Pestalozzi, pointing out to him the repose and the independence he would enjoy, and on the 1st of July, 1804, they got him to sign a treaty by which the actual management of the establishment was intrusted to Fellenberg, so as to leave Pestalozzi, it was said, who remained owner of the institute, an annual pension of fifty louis and leisure to continue his literary work. As a matter of fact, Pestalozzi was reduced to complete inactivity.

The establishment began with sixty-seven pupils and seven teachers, and everything seemed to indicate that it would prosper. Unfortunately serious dissensions soon occurred between Pestalozzi and Fellenberg, whose utterly dissimilar characters necessarily brought them into collision. In the course of September, a violent scene took place between them, and only the intervention of Niederer and Muralt prevented an open rupture. But that sufficed to disgust Pestalozzi with his stay at Münchenbuchsee. On the 19th of

October, 1804, he set out for Yverdon, accompanied by Niederer and Krüsi. The Münchenbuchsee establishment remained under Fellenberg's direction as far as the household management was concerned, under that of Tobler and Muralt for the educational part.

Here we may consider Pestalozzi's career as a teacher as terminated, for from this time he devoted himself entirely to his literary work. "I began my work at Burgdorf," he wrote some time after, "and I finished it at Burgdorf."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Morf, III, p. 105.

## CHAPTER V

### YVERDON (1805-1825)

Settlement at Yverdon. — Difficulties at starting in the institute.

— Arrival of three Prussian pupil teachers. — Account of the life at the institute according to different witnesses. — Niederer's predominating influence. — Niederer and Joseph Schmid; their rivalry. — Inspection of the institute by order of the Helvetican diet. — Father Girard's report in the name of the commission. — Witness of Karl von Raumer. — Wordy war occasioned by the report of the board of inspection. — Schmid's departure. — Jullien's visit — Starting of a printing-press and sale of books; disastrous undertaking. — Appointment of a committee of domestic management. — Schmid's return. — Pestalozzi's visit to the Tsar Alexander of Russia and to the king of Prussia. — New conflict between Niederer and Schmid. — Decay of the institute. — Niederer's departure. — Revolts of the masters. — Negotiation with Fellenberg and rupture. — Success of the subscriptions for the Complete Works of Pestalozzi. — Opening of the orphanage at Clindy. — Fusion of the orphanage and institute. — Fresh quarrels with Niederer. — Decay and closure of the Establishment.

THE beginning at the Yverdon institute was most arduous, and Pestalozzi and his faithful disciples, Niederer and Krüsi, who shared his room until the castle was ready to receive them, even had to endure privation. Having received from the king of Denmark a present of a hundred louis d'or, in acknowledgment of his kind reception of two Danes, — Ström and

Torlitz, — sent to Burgdorf to study the method, Pestalozzi hastened to send to Münchenbuchsee for some poor children there, whom Fellenberg had admitted very much against his inclination. But the notables, who always regarded Pestalozzi with suspicion, did not confide their children to his care, and in the month of December the institute only numbered eighteen pupils. Yet Krüsi declares that this was the happiest period of Pestalozzi's existence, and says he rarely saw him more joyous and more peaceful, relieved of all care for the morrow by his pension, and enjoying his life with the careless happiness of a child. It was at this time that he wrote his work entitled *Views, Experiences, and Means of promoting a Method of Education which is in Conformity with Human Nature*,<sup>1</sup> which he did not publish until 1807, and then only in part.

In consequence of new scenes with Fellenberg, into the details of which we need not enter, the latter tried, it seems, to oust Pestalozzi. There was a complete rupture, and Pestalozzi's old colleagues, refusing to remain any longer at Münchenbuchsee, left Fellenberg to go to Yverdon, taking with them those of their pupils whose families consented to their removal. Fellenberg, enraged, demanded the payment of a considerable indemnity, and seized the furniture of the institute as pledge. Pestalozzi went to Münchenbuchsee to regulate the matter, and there was another violent scene between the two, in the course of which Pestalozzi took off his shoes, telling Fellenberg to take them too if he chose, that would not prevent him from

<sup>1</sup> *Ansichten, Erfahrungen, und Mittel zur Beförderung einer der Menschennatur angemessener Erziehungsweise.*

going across Berne to Yverdon barefoot, together with his teachers and his pupils. Finally the affair was ended by a promise to pay, which Pestalozzi signed. Then the institute was free to move, and in the first days of July, 1805, all the staff was reunited at Yverdon.

Here begins the most glorious, and at the same time the most troublous, period of Pestalozzi's existence, — glorious because of the triumph of his ideas in Europe, troublous because of the difficulties inseparable doubtless from every educational establishment, but singularly aggravated by Pestalozzi's lack of the special capacities necessary for a head-master, his too confiding disposition, and his absolute lack of a sense of the practical.

It will be remembered with what vigour Prussia, crushed at Jena, set about the work of its regeneration, and that Fichte, the philosopher, contributed to this work by his celebrated *Discourses to the German Nation*, in which he declared without hesitation Pestalozzi's method to be the only one suitable to serve as basis of a truly national education.<sup>1</sup>

These warnings were to obtain all the more favourable a hearing, from the fact that the men who then directed public education in Prussia — Nicolovius, Suvern, and some of their colleagues — already knew Pestalozzi either personally, or through his writings, or by the reputation of his institute, and had been converted to his ideas. Queen Louise herself, who was a great admirer of his, took an active part in the movement. On the 11th of September, 1808, Schröter, the minister to whom the king had just

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vide* p. 29.

intrusted the organisation of national education in the Prussian provinces, wrote to Pestalozzi as follows: "Entirely convinced of the great value of the method of education invented and so happily applied by you, I have resolved to proceed to a complete reform of education in the Prussian provinces, founded on the introduction of this method in the primary schools, from which I expect the greatest benefit for the culture of the people." And he announced to him his intention of sending two young men at once to Yverdon, to "draw at the source itself for the spirit of the whole method of education and instruction," to be initiated in the method "under the guidance of its venerable originator," and not only to "learn the different isolated parts, but also to grasp the whole in its various relations and its most intimate connections." As soon as Pestalozzi had answered and given his opinion on the choice of these young men, a cabinet order appointed three men — Preuss, Kawerau, and Hemming, who was then at Basle — to go as boarders to Yverdon and "be trained there to teach in the Prussian States." A yearly sum of three hundred and fifty thalers was allotted to each.

The three pupil teachers arrived at Yverdon in the course of May, 1809, followed by a fourth in September, and soon there came from all parts of Germany a host of young men whose patriotism impelled them to the teaching profession. Pestalozzi's joy may be easily imagined, and his eager desire to fulfil all expectations, and the superhuman work he imposed on himself to satisfy all the demands of his visitors. He rose at two o'clock in the morning in order to

devote himself to his literary work, and exacted the same zeal from his colleagues, and still more from the teachers whose training he had undertaken. He made these too take their share of the housework, which was divided among the inmates. They had to chop firewood, light the fires, and copy manuscript, when they were not occupied in teaching. "There were years," Ramsauer tells us, "when not one of us would have been found in bed after three o'clock in the morning, and we worked summer and winter from three to six o'clock." Blochmann, a master of the institute, also tells us that "the pupils rose at five o'clock, the masters at four, or even earlier, and that for several years the latter had night duty, so that one of them was always up to take care of the house and wake Pestalozzi at two o'clock, and the others at the time he appointed. From six to seven the pupils prepared their lessons, then Pestalozzi read prayers in the presence of all the inmates of the house, and generally also of the girls' school.<sup>1</sup> A text from the Bible, a canticle of Gellert, or a subject of morality furnished him matter for a somewhat lengthy discourse, which he delivered walking up and down—a discourse which was often very stimulating and edifying. After prayers, the pupils washed themselves in the courtyard, and in winter the more robust went in their shirt-sleeves to the edge of the half-frozen canal. (None of the pupils and hardly any of the masters wore hats or cravats even in the town.) The ablutions finished, they were mustered for review and then conducted to breakfast. From eight to twelve

<sup>1</sup> Opened in 1806 at Yverdon, under the management of Krüsi and Hopf.



came school, in which religion, languages, arithmetic, and geometry were the chief subjects taught. From twelve to one, all, old and young, went to the border of the lake to play or bathe. The midday meal was short and simple. School began again at two o'clock, which was as bad for the masters as for the pupils. At four o'clock came recreation on the border of the lake again (play, gymnastics, or bathing), then the afternoon meal, at which the masters assembled in a separate room to talk freely among themselves. From five to six the pupils prepared their lessons for the following day; then they were again assembled for prayers, after that came supper, and at nine all the pupils went to bed. Each of the masters had the supervision of forty pupils one day in three, and besides every upper master had the special charge of a certain number of pupils whom he took once a week to Pestalozzi, after having handed him reports on their work, progress, and conduct. Pestalozzi generally received them in bed, and the manner in which he praised those who had deserved it, and reprimanded those who had been forgetful of their duty, was as original, as it was effective with the children, and instructive to us. Saturday, at nine o'clock, the masters' meeting took place, at which each child was discussed and questions of discipline handled. On other days, at the same hour, educational conferences were held, at which Pestalozzi was not present; only on extraordinary occasions we met in his room. Then he was sometimes humorous and pleasant, sometimes passionate, and sometimes even became so violent that he rushed out of the room, banging the door after him; but then at the sight of some child's happy, peaceful face

he soon recovered his temper, became pleasant again, and scolded himself for having been so violent.”<sup>1</sup>

We have also extremely interesting accounts of Pestalozzi and of the inner life of the institute from old pupils. The first of these is the Vaud historian, Vulliemin, who relates as follows:—

“I was eight years old when I entered the Pestalozzi institute. Picture to yourselves, children, a very ugly man, with hair sticking up all over his head, his face deeply pitted by smallpox and covered with red spots, his beard ragged and in disorder, no cravat, trousers half unbuttoned, falling in folds over wrinkled stockings, which also fell over enormous slippers; his walk hurried and jerky; then eyes which sometimes expanded as they darted forth lightning, sometimes shut, to lend themselves to inner contemplation; features which sometimes expressed deep sadness, sometimes happiness full of benignity; a voice, which spoke now slowly, now precipitately, and was now tender and melodious, now loud as thunder: such was he whom we used to call *Father Pestalozzi*.

“Although he was just as I have here described him, we all loved him, for he loved us all; we loved him so dearly, that when we had not seen him for some time, we were quite sad, and once he appeared we could not turn our eyes away from him.

“We knew that at the time when the wars of the Helvetian Revolution had multiplied the number of poor and orphan children, he had gathered together a great many round him, and had devoted himself to them; that he was the friend of the unfortunate, of little ones, of all children.

<sup>1</sup> *Heinrich Pestalozzi*, pp. 118-119.

“My fellow-citizens at Yverdon, the town where I was born, had generously put at his disposal the old castle founded by ‘Little Charlemagne,’<sup>1</sup> the long halls of which surrounded vast courtyards, and gave plenty of room for playgrounds, as well as class rooms, for a numerous family. There were from a hundred and fifty to two hundred of us young people, of all nationalities, enclosed in these walls, where we by turns studied and gave ourselves up to merry frolics. It often happened that our game at prisoners’ base, begun in the castle courtyard, was finished on the grassy swards which are bounded by the promenade *Derrière le Lac*. In winter we made a mighty snow fortress, which some attacked and others heroically defended. None of us were ever ill, or very rarely.

“Every morning early we came, one after the other, to have a cold water douche. We always went bare-headed. One winter day, however, when the cold, bleak wind, not that to which the Greeks gave the pretty name of Boreas, but the icy blast which swept over the square at Yverdon, made all flee before it, my father taking pity on me, put a hat on my head. Unlucky article of attire, my schoolfellows had hardly caught sight of it than a cry was raised, a hat! a hat! one hand soon knocked it off my head, a hundred others sent it flying through the air, into the courtyard, into the corridors, then into the attic, and finally a last blow sent it through a window, and into the river which washes one of the castle walls. I never saw it again; it went to relate my misadventure to the lake.

<sup>1</sup> Surname of Count Pierre of Savoy (1203-1268).

“Our teachers were for the most part still young men, some had been made orphans by the revolutionary age in which they lived, and were the first who had grown up under the eye of Pestalozzi, their father and ours; some, too, were men of letters, learned men who had come to share his task. On the whole, there was very little learning. I had heard Pestalozzi boast at an advanced age that he had read nothing for forty years. His first pupils, our masters, read as little as he did. Their teaching was addressed to the intelligence rather than the memory, and its aim was the harmonious cultivation of germs placed in us by Providence. ‘Strive always,’ Pestalozzi continually repeated, ‘to educate the child, not to teach him tricks, as one teaches a dog tricks; for that is what education in ordinary schools often amounts to.’ Our studies were confined chiefly to number, form, and language.

“Language was taught us by the help of sense-perception; we were taught to see, and in consequence to form correct ideas on the relations of things; we had no difficulty in expressing ourselves clearly on what we thoroughly understood.

“The first elements of geography were taught us in the open country. We were taken in our daily outing to a narrow walk in the neighbourhood of Yverdon, by the side of which the Buron flows. We were made to study it as a whole, and in all its details, until we had a correct and full perception of it. Then we were told to supply ourselves with clay, of which there were large deposits on one side of the valley, and we filled big baskets, which we had brought with us for this purpose. When we had got back to the castle, we sat

down to long tables, and each one of us reproduced in relief the part which had been assigned to him of the valley which we had studied. The next day we went again to the valley, made new explorations, this time from a higher elevation than before, and each time added to our work. We continued in this way until we had finished the study of the river-basin at Yverdon, of which we gained a bird's-eye view from the top of the Montela, which overlooks the whole, and had also finished our model. Then, and not till then, we passed from the model to the map, which we did not look at until we had gained an insight into its meaning.

“We were made to invent geometry, the masters contenting themselves with pointing out the end to attain, and putting us on the road to it. Arithmetic was taught in the same way. Our sums were done in our head and *viva voce* without the help of paper. Some of us had gained a surprising faculty in these exercises on mental arithmetic, and as quackery gains ground everywhere, we were the only ones who were exhibited to the numerous strangers attracted daily to Yverdon by Pestalozzi's fame. We were told over and over again that a great work was being carried on in our midst, that the eyes of the world were on us, and we had no difficulty in believing what we were told.

“What was so emphatically called Pestalozzi's *method* was, it is true, an enigma to us. So it was to our teachers. Like the disciples of Socrates, every one of them interpreted the master's doctrines in his own fashion; but we were far from the times when these divergencies created discord, when our chief masters, after having each one of them laid claim to be the only one who really understood Pestalozzi,

ended by declaring that Pestalozzi did not really understand himself; that he had only come to be what he was — Schmid said by Schmid's help, Niederer by Niederer's. At the time when I first frolicked among these walls, inhabited by healthy and vigorous boys, scenes similar to those which Molière delighted his audience with, when he put the professors in the *Bourgeois Gentilhomme* on the stage, — scenes which were to bring about the ruin of the establishment, — had not taken place. All the members of Pestalozzi's large family were now knit together by their faith in him. Not but what he was then, as he was later on, an inefficient manager. He had no idea of order, tact, or skill in ruling men. In his childish simplicity, he had no place in his heart for mistrust, he believed in no evil, and, easy as he was to deceive, was bound sooner or later to be hoodwinked right and left; but at the time of which I speak he still had power over the hearts and wills of all. One incident will show you the spirit which prevailed in those early days.

“These teachers, who later on made the welkin ring with their quarrels, received no fixed salary. Their daily needs were supplied, and they asked for nothing beyond this. The box in which the pupils' fees were placed was kept in the room of the father of the family, and each one of our masters had a key to it. Did he want a coat or a pair of shoes? he opened the box and took according to his necessities. Things went on like that for nearly a year, without anything very wrong taking place. One would have thought oneself among the early Christians.”<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vulliamin, *Souvenirs racontés à ses petits-enfants* (Guillaume, pp. 225 et 229).

Here again is the account of another Vaud pupil, quoted by Mlle. Chavannes in her biography of Pestalozzi: —

“ I entered the Yverdon institute when I was about seven years and a half, in June, 1808; and I only remained there nine months. It was the most brilliant period in the history of the institute. There were one hundred and thirty-seven pupils, not only Swiss, Germans, and French, but also Spaniards, Italians, Russians, and even Americans. The teaching of mathematics was carried so far that boys of twelve did in their head such sums as these, — how many times is  $\frac{2}{5}$  contained in  $2\frac{3}{4}$ ?  $44 \times 1\frac{1}{2} x = 60$ , find  $x$ . On the other hand, religious feeling, and above all Christian faith, were far less cultivated; thus I had a great many lessons in mental arithmetic and German, but I do not remember that we were ever made to read the Bible, or learn any of it by heart. Pestalozzi delivered a religious discourse every morning, walking up and down the big hall among the assembled masters and pupils; but as it was all in German, and the good old man's pronunciation was very indistinct, I gained no benefit from it. . . . As regards bodily needs, the food and the cleanliness left very much to be desired. In spite of that, although I suffered very much in the beginning, far from Vevey and my kind parents, I gradually got used to things, and I became all the more attached to my devoted masters, because they shared in all the games and because, by an excess of freedom, the pupils were allowed to say ‘thou’ to them.<sup>1</sup> I was above all most heartily attached to their

<sup>1</sup> “Thou” in most European countries is used to relatives, children, and intimate friends, “you” to everybody else.

excellent head-master, Pestalozzi. I still see before me the good old man, with his short breeches negligently braced, his stockings falling over his shoes, his shirt, his dishevelled hair and beard, but casting such beaming and tender looks from his eyes that every one was attracted to him; all — men, women, and children — were glad to get his affectionate embrace. I must also add in praise of this excellent man, that if he did not develop in me the fear of God and faith in the Saviour, I learnt from him to do my work as a pupil from a sense of duty, rather than with the help of the dangerous stimulus of rewards and praise.”<sup>1</sup>

This is the account given us by M. de Guimps, who was a pupil at the institute from 1808 to 1817: “The pupils enjoyed great liberty: the two gates of the castles were open all day, and there was no gate-keeper; one could come and go as one chose, as in a simple family, and the children never abused this liberty. There were generally ten lesson-hours a day, from six in the morning until eight o’clock at night; but each lesson only lasted an hour, and was followed by a short interval during which we generally changed rooms. Besides, some of these lessons consisted of gymnastics or manual labour, such as pasteboard modelling or gardening. The last hour of the day, from seven to eight o’clock, was devoted to free work; the children said *they worked for themselves* and could draw or learn geography, write to their parents, or put their exercise books in order, just as they felt inclined.

“The youngest masters, who were, as a rule, pupils

<sup>1</sup> Mlle. Chavannes, *Biographie de H. Pestalozzi*, 1853, pp. 141-143 (quoted by Guillaume, p. 229).



from Berthoud (Burgdorf), had entire charge of the supervision out of lesson hours; they slept in the dormitories, played with the pupils in recreation hours, and enjoyed the games as much as the pupils did; they accompanied them to the garden, to the bathing, to the promenade, and were much liked; they were the ones whom the pupils called 'thou.' They were divided into groups, and were on duty all day one day in three, for this supervision occupied them from morning till evening.

"Three times a week the masters handed in the reports on the conduct and work of the pupils to Pestalozzi. The boys were called in five or six at a time to the old man to receive his remonstrances and his exhortations. Pestalozzi took them one after another into the corner of his room and whispered with them: he asked if the boy had nothing to tell him, to ask of him; he tried thus to gain his confidence, to know how he was, what he liked and what he disliked. Every Saturday the work of the week was passed in review at a general meeting.

"The faithful Lisbeth, Mme. Krüsi, who had followed her master to Yverdon as housekeeper, had brought with her the domestic and culinary customs of the German Swiss, and those who came from French-speaking districts had much difficulty in getting accustomed to this order of things, which was of a somewhat primitive simplicity. The food was at least good and wholesome in material if not in the preparation, and there was plenty of it, and the meals were numerous in accordance with the demands of German stomachs.

"At seven o'clock, at the end of the first lesson, the

pupils went to perform their ablutions in the courtyard; the water pumped up from the well flowed through a long pipe with holes bored in it at both sides, so that each child got his dash of pure, cold water; jugs and basins were unknown. The toilet completed, they breakfasted off porridge. At eight o'clock lessons began again. At ten o'clock there was a pause, during which those who were hungry went to Mme. Krüsi for bread and dried fruits. At twelve, an hour's recreation, bathing, or a game at prisoner's base on the grass at *Derrière le Lac*, etc.; at one o'clock, dinner of soup, meat, and vegetables; at half-past one, lessons until half-past four. Then came the afternoon meal; sometimes a slice of cheese as big as one's hand, sometimes enormous slices of bread, covered with a thick layer of butter. The pupils came up in single file and carried off their bread and butter to eat it where they liked during the recreation, which lasted until six o'clock. Sometimes the boys spent their recreation at *Derrière le Lac*, sometimes in the large garden belonging to the castle, where every child had his own little plot to cultivate. From six to eight came more lessons, then supper, which was the same as dinner.

- "When we consider the material conditions of the life which the masters at the Yverdon institute led, we cannot doubt their devotion to Pestalozzi and his work, nor the nobility of the sentiments which had attracted and now kept them faithful to him. We have said what the food was like, the furniture was still more primitive; some of the older masters lived out of the castle; but all the others, in the midst of this swarm, had not a room of their own to which

they could retire; when they needed a retreat for quiet work, they constructed little plank studies in the upper stories, or settled down in the round towers which rise at the four corners of the old building.

“M. and Mme. Pestalozzi occupied a room on the second floor of the north side; they often invited some masters to drink coffee with them; often, too, they held evening receptions to which some pupils were admitted, and invited the town inhabitants or strangers passing through. Mme. Pestalozzi did the honours with a kind, nay touching, goodness. Although she had never regained her health after the disasters at Neuhof, she had kept all her freshness of imagination and a kind of poetry of the heart which made her the centre of most agreeable conversation.

“As to Pestalozzi himself, he accosted every one with the most tender benevolence; his conversation was lively, intellectual, full of imagination and originality, but difficult to follow on account of his bad pronunciation. But he was very variable; in a moment he would pass from a frank and expansive gayety to a meditative and concentrated sadness. Habitually absent-minded, preoccupied, a prey to feverish agitation, he could never sit still; he walked about the corridors of the castle, one hand behind his back or under his coat, the other holding the end of his cravat between his teeth. Every day he came in like that to the lessons; then, if the teaching pleased him, he grew radiant, he caressed the children and talked smilingly to them; but if the master's proceedings did not please him, he went out at once in a rage, and banged the door after him.

“He continued to work at the perfecting of his method and new applications of it with indefatigable zeal ; every morning he had an under-master, generally Ramsauer, called to his bed to write at his dictation. But he was seldom content with his own work ; it was corrected again and again, and often begun afresh.

“When the season permitted, several hours in the afternoon were devoted every week to military exercises. The pupils formed a little battalion, with flag, drum, band, and arsenal ; they became skilled in the most complicated manœuvres. When they proceeded to exercises in shooting, the non-commissioned officers were occupied in making cartridges under the direction of the chief instructor. From time to time they had sham fights in a place chosen some miles from the town. Sometimes, too, they practised shooting at a target ; the conqueror was rewarded with a sheep and its lamb, and the use of a little stall in the garden.

“Gymnastics were practised, and games at prisoner’s base, etc., were played regularly. In winter the boys skated as well, and in summer bathed in the lake, and took long mountain walks.

“It will be remembered that manual labour was in Pestalozzi’s programme ; it was often tried in the institute, but was never continued in a regular fashion. The great number and the diversity of the pupils and of the occupations was probably the obstacle which was insurmountable. The gardening succeeded the best ; sometimes the pupils had their little plots to cultivate ; sometimes they were sent by turns, two and two, to work for some hours under the direction of the gardener. The children often succeeded pretty well in bookbinding and pasteboard modelling ; they con-

structed solid figures with it for the better understanding of geometry. But their skill and their cleverness were specially exercised in the decorations for festivals.

“New Year’s Day was celebrated by a speech from Pestalozzi, and a religious ceremony, followed by the distribution of presents from the parents, and a grand dinner; in the evening there was a torchlight procession (every pupil made his own torch), then came a ball at which the girls from the institute appeared, and also guests from the town. Between New Year and the 12th of January there were few lessons; everybody was busied with the preparations for the festival of the 12th, Pestalozzi’s birthday. On that occasion, the pupils of every class decorated their room, turning it more or less into a grove, with cottage, chapel, ruin, and sometimes even a waterfall or fountain. They took long walks in the neighbouring woods to look for fir trees, ivy, and moss. They prepared transparencies with emblems and inscriptions. Often too, on that day, the pupils gave some dramatic performance, the subject of which was generally taken from the heroic deeds of Swiss history in the Middle Ages; they made their costumes themselves of cardboard and coloured paper, likewise their cuirasses, helmets, etc. On Christmas Eve there was the traditional German Christmas tree, a fir tree with apples, gilt nuts, etc., illuminated by many candles, in the middle of the prayer room.

“Singing played a great part in Pestalozzi’s institute, and was the delight of nearly all the inhabitants of the house; everybody sang there, all day and everywhere. The two Swiss masters, Pfeiffer and Nägeli, had seconded Pestalozzi’s desires in this respect, by publishing charming collections of songs for the young.

Germany is rich in sweet melodies and simple poems, appropriate to the needs and character of childhood. They taught us some French songs too, but that was a poor and unsatisfactory source. In spite of some praiseworthy efforts, France has not yet risen above this inferiority.”<sup>1</sup>

Finally we will add Pestalozzi's portrait as sketched by Toerlitz, one of the two teachers sent to Yverdon by the government of Denmark, in his account of his stay at the institute: “Pestalozzi is as ugly as a man can possibly be. His clothes are repulsively dirty, and his shoes have not been blacked since they left the shoemaker's hands. He never combs his hair, and he only sends for the barber on Fridays. His stockings, as a rule, fall down over his shoes. When he gives himself up to work, he goes to bed with his clothes on and dictates. Then his ideas are put on paper in just as odd a manner as they float about in his mind. . . .”

As we have devoted a special chapter to the influence which Pestalozzi's doctrines had on the education of foreign countries, which dates from this time, we shall confine ourselves to finishing his biography properly so-called, by contenting ourselves with relating briefly the facts relative to the history of the institute at Yverdon.

The enormous wealth of the pupils sent to Yverdon by parents who did not trouble themselves at all about the *idea of elementary education* but who merely wanted to have their children pushed on as fast as possible, and the mixture of French and German pupils, had obliged Pestalozzi to follow a very different path to the one he had traced for himself. He had to do with

<sup>1</sup> M. de Guimps, *Histoire de Pestalozzi*, pp. 332-340.

an exacting public, and the reports be published for their benefit, which contrast singularly with the development of his idea contained in his previous works, especially in *How Gertrude teaches her Children*, bear witness to his anxiety to please, as far as his somewhat indifferent staff permitted. They had to work, as Pestalozzi says, "for show." "It seemed that the idea of elementary education, originally trumpeted forth with such magniloquence and prolixity, had completely disappeared from our midst."<sup>1</sup>

This contradiction must also be attributed to the influence of Niederer, one of the chief masters of the establishment, who, by his lively intelligence, his perspicuity, and his university education, exercised a great ascendancy over Pestalozzi and played a prominent part in the institute. Niederer not only had charge of the religious instruction in the upper classes, but also gave lectures on the method and assisted in the literary work. But abandoning himself to his idealistic tendencies, he soon went his own way, and, as Pestalozzi remarks, "created his own system on the idea of elementary education," and obtained thus great influence over the minds of all the masters, and gained Pestalozzi's entire confidence.<sup>2</sup> And Pestalozzi confesses naïvely, "I no longer understand myself; if you want to know what I think and what I wish, go and ask Niederer." The contrast between these two men, however, was too great for the illusion to be of long duration.

Among those of Pestalozzi's colleagues who considered that they ought to counteract Niederer's tenden-

<sup>1</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale als Vorsteher meiner Erziehungsinstitut in Burgdorf und Iferten*, 1826.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 30.

cies and his invading influence, we must especially mention Joseph Schmid, an old pupil whom Pestalozzi had persuaded to stay on as teacher. He was an essentially practical man and at the same time a teacher of no mean power. No character could be conceived more diametrically opposed to that of Niederer. He, too, justly gained a great influence in the institute, which could not fail to displease Niederer. Pestalozzi showed "a little too soon and too imprudently," as he says, his preference for this young teacher, in whom he already saw "the chief supporter of the house," and to whom he gave all his confidence. But that highly displeased Niederer. There were as a matter of fact germs of discord, which were not long in coming up; for Pestalozzi had not the necessary firmness to root them out at the beginning. He expresses his distress on this subject in his New Year's Speech, 1808, which he made before his coffin, as was his custom when he considered it advisable to work upon the feelings of his hearers.<sup>1</sup> "I am not happy. The ice broke under my feet every time I tried to get a firm foothold. . . . The bond which unites us all has shown itself loose at places where it ought to be closest. I have seen corruption spread where I thought salvation reposed on a deep foundation. . . . I have seen love grow cold just when I thought it blazed up to the greatest heat, confidence disappear just when I needed it most as the breath of my life."

✓ <sup>1</sup> Pestalozzi had had a coffin made in 1806 with a death's head on it, and generally kept it under his bed. On solemn occasions he had it put in the middle of the room, saying: "*Do you see me in this coffin? How do you feel at the sight?*" (Ramsauer, *Memorabilien*, 1846, p. 65.)



And after accusing himself of being the cause of all the evil, he concludes: "Behold my coffin. That is my salvation."

The same year four masters — Tobler, Hopf, Barroud, and Steiner — left the institute. Niederer, more and more irritated at the importance which Pestalozzi attached to Schmid, also wanted to leave with Krüsi, but Pestalozzi succeeded in persuading him to stay. Froebel,<sup>1</sup> who had already visited the institute in 1805, came back in 1808 with his pupils, the sons of Herr von Holzhausen, of Frankfort, and spent two years there.

Meanwhile attacks began to be made on the establishment from all sides, especially in the Swiss newspapers. At the instigation, as it seems, of Niederer, but certainly against the advice of Schmid, who knew the weak points of the institute, Pestalozzi addressed himself to the Helvetic Diet, on the 20th of June, 1809, to ask "that it would deign to give a public mark of attention either to the institute at Yverdon, or to the method of elementary education there in use, which having obtained the suffrages of several States and of a great number of learned and highly respected men, now attracts the attention of all Europe."

The Diet acceded to his request and confided the inspection of the institute to a commission composed of three members, — Merian, member of the petty council of the canton of Basle, Trechsel, professor of mathematics at Berne, and Father Girard, director of the schools at Freiburg.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vide H. Courthope Bowen, *Froebel and Education through Self-activity*, New York, 1897.

<sup>2</sup> Report of the Sittings of the Diet, June 22, 1809 (Guillaume, p. 268).

The commission arrived at Yverdon, in November, 1809, and after a five days' visit commissioned Father Girard to draw up a report. While doing justice to the efforts of Pestalozzi and his colleagues, Father Girard did not spare them in his criticism. Niederer had desired to confine the examination solely to the doctrines of the Pestalozzi school, but Father Girard refused, saying with much good sense: "The speculative part was not our business. We had to examine what was actually being done, not what was aimed at. Perhaps a more profound and subtle philosophy than ours will find a kind of lowness in our report. Our ideas will not be noble enough, and we shall have used too vulgar a form of speech. In this case, we should venture to observe that expressions do not make things, and that all the sublimity of metaphysics often only consists in saying things which every one knows, in words which nobody can understand."

As to the originality of the principles on which the education at Yverdon was based, he says: "The great maxims on which the institute at Yverdon is grounded are most undoubtedly the invariable maxims of goodness and beneficence. But is Pestalozzi the inventor of these principles? He himself has no such high opinion of himself. He by no means considers himself the creator of his art; but he is proud to be the disciple of it. 'We do not lay claim to the honour of the invention,' he said to us once in the midst of his children, 'but we try to put in practice what *common sense* taught men thousands of years ago.' We see from these words that Pestalozzi traces the birth of the art which he professes very far back indeed.

He attributes it to common sense, which is old, and not to science, which is new, and he sees it everywhere where men exist. We may abide by this declaration, which does honour to the master's modesty, while it puts to confusion the vanity of some of his disciples. Undoubtedly exaggerated praise, without rhyme or reason, an exclusive and disdainful attitude, cannot be profitable to education. Its best interests demand equity and tranquillity. Of what consequence, after all, is the invention when we have only to consider the thing and its utility? The principles of education decidedly belong to good sense, and if we sometimes pause to comment on the worthy old man's words, we do not dream of proving a truth that has no need of proofs. It will be a homage that we pay to the common light which sheds its rays on all men, and a kind of reparation that it perhaps has a right to expect from us under these circumstances."

In the application of the method to the various branches of instruction, Father Girard finds nothing very new, except in the teaching of drawing and singing.

In answer to the question whether the institute could serve as a model to primary schools, Father Girard answers, "If it were simply a question of general rules, which one willingly calls by the name of Pestalozzi's method, although this term has not as yet a very definite meaning, it is evident that this method and these rules must animate all our institutions." But he does not find that the means employed can be imitated. "We regret to find that there are so few parts which can be used as they are. We always

come back to the same results,— the studies at Yverdon connect themselves only very imperfectly with public instruction. . . . The institute goes its way; our teachers go theirs, and there is no likelihood that they will ever meet.” And in conclusion: “We must always regret that Pestalozzi should have been dragged out of the modest career he chose for himself with so much zeal and devotion. This primary school, model for all the others, will only be a thought in his uneasy and toilsome life—a beautiful thought, doubtless, which will do honour to his heart, and make his memory live. Let us render justice to his intentions, to his efforts, to his perseverance; let us profit by these useful ideas, let us benefit by the examples held up to us; and let us pity the destiny of a man who, baffled perpetually by circumstances, has never been able to do exactly what his soul desired.”

The report gives us also most interesting details as to the condition and progress of the institute. For instance, it tells us that there were then at Yverdon one hundred and sixty-five pupils, of whom one hundred and thirty-seven were boarders. Eighty-seven of the pupils were foreigners. There were besides thirty-two pupil-teachers, of whom all were foreigners except five. “The greater number of these lived in the town and were utterly independent of the institute. . . . The pupils of this category were classed as *foreigners learning the method*; this name is very appropriate, because one would be wrong to picture to oneself a training college for teachers, such as those which exist elsewhere.” The school for girls, lodged in a house in the vicinity of the castle, was still, so to speak, in its cradle, and numbered a dozen pupil-

teachers; "here we find on a small scale a training college for women-teachers."

To revert to the boys' school: "Every branch of instruction has a certain number of professors, each one of whom takes a certain part of the subject in question and takes up the thread where his predecessor broke off. These professors form a special committee, which meets once a week to exchange the experiences and reflections which have been caused by the teaching, for the benefit of all and for the teaching as a whole. Besides the instruction department there are two others, one for discipline and the other for religion. The masters in charge of the one collect the reports of the masters who have had supervision duty, and decide on the question of the breaches against the rules. The masters in charge of the other, which is higher and more important, watch over the moral and religious conduct of the pupils; they consider the characters of the pupils, their vices and bad habits, and meditate on measures to prevent or remove these. Pestalozzi is present at the meetings of these committees, and is the guiding spirit and the soul of them. At the end of each week there is a general meeting, the resolutions of which have the force of law. There is no regard of persons there, each one has the rank which his enlightenment, his activity, and the confidence which he inspires in his colleagues assign him. Whoever has anything to propose, has the right to speak. The head himself is so little jealous of the preëminence which is his due by right of his character, his age, and his name, that on ceremonious occasions, if he takes part in them at all, he makes over to one of his friends the charge of

presiding over the assembly. The Board of Management has an office, the members of which have an onerous task. This is twofold: one part, literary and scientific; the other, the correspondence with the pupils' parents. The latter keep registers, in which detailed reports as to the progress and character of each child are entered, and extracts from these are afterward sent home to the children's families. The literary side corresponds with foreign teachers and the public; it edits the periodical works which are printed in Switzerland and Germany, and inserts articles in learned reviews. Pestalozzi presides over this extensive work and shares with his friends a task which he could not manage alone."<sup>1</sup>

This report, communicated in manuscript form to Pestalozzi in the spring of 1810, called forth great discontent among the staff of the institute. Pestalozzi declared that "*the idea of the elementary education, on which he desired an examination, had not been examined at all.*" However that may be, the report was sent to the Diet on the 12th of May, 1810, which decided that it should be published in French and German. There was no further result except that in the session of 1811 the Diet expressed to Pestalozzi the gratitude of his country.

Some days before the arrival of the commission at Yverdon, the institute had received the visit of Karl von Raumer, who later on wrote his *History of Pedagogy*. Raumer was then about twenty-six years of age. He had been filled with enthusiasm by the perusal of Fichte's *Discourses to the German Nation*,

<sup>1</sup> *Rapport sur l'institut de M. Pestalozzi*, quoted by Guillaume, pp. 271-277.

had left Paris, where he was studying science, to come and watch the method which, according to the eloquent philosopher, was to regenerate the German nation. He has left us some impressions of this visit which deserve to be reproduced.

"We were taken to Pestalozzi. His dress was in great disorder, for he wore an old grey coat, no waistcoat, short breeches, and stockings which fell in wrinkles over his slippers; his thick, black, wavy hair was all tumbled and in disorder; his forehead was furrowed with deep wrinkles; his dark blue eyes sometimes wore a gentle and tender expression, sometimes were full of flames. One hardly noticed his ugliness, for his physiognomy was radiant with geniality; one read his long sufferings, and at the same time his great hopes, in the features of his worn face. Soon after we saw Niederer, who made on me the impression of a young Roman Catholic priest; Krüsi, somewhat stout, fair, blue-eyed, with a gentle, kindly air; Schmid, more careless in his attire than even Pestalozzi, with strongly marked features, and the piercing eye of a bird of prey. . . . The interior of the castle made a somewhat gloomy impression on me; but its situation is splendid; a large meadow separates it from the southern end of the fine lake of Neufchâtel, on the shores of which rise the Jura slopes covered with vineyards."<sup>1</sup>

"A few days after my arrival, the commission of inspection appointed by the Diet came to Yverdon and stayed five days. Those were wretched days for Pestalozzi and his masters; they foresaw that the commission, which confined itself to results which

<sup>1</sup> Raumer, *Geschichte der Pädagogik*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Vol. II, p. 423.

were really worth noticing, would not draw up an enthusiastic report. . . .

“I had come to learn and to make myself useful. I slept in one of the dormitories, I took my meals with the children, I was present at the lessons, at morning and evening prayers, and at the masters’ meetings. At the end of some weeks, when I was spending the evening with Pestalozzi and the other masters at the *Hotel du Sauvage*, where they met every fortnight, Pestalozzi took me aside in the next room. There, after some preliminary words, he began to discuss certain masters of the institute with a freedom of language that astounded me; what he said was in utter contradiction with the language used in the *Report to the Parents*, but not with what I had been able to see for myself. He concluded by proposing that my friend (Przystanowski) and I should join with Schmid, whose ability and energy he lauded to the skies, to inaugurate a radical reform in the institute. This proposition was so unexpected that I asked for time to consider. I communicated the news to my friend, who was as surprised as I was. This state of things naturally brought us and Schmid together; we were thus initiated in the *arcana imperii*; we put our heads together to find out what were the obstacles to the prosperity of the institute and what the means of removing them.

“The first defect which we proposed to remedy was caused by the mixture of German and French pupils; as far as that was concerned, we should have made two institutes instead of one. This was, however, not possible, principally by reason of external difficulties, which, however, could have been removed. Pestalozzi



later on allowed that we were quite right, as is proved by a passage of his *Lebensschicksale*. Another drawback was the absence of family life, at any rate, for the youngest pupils, those from six to ten years of age; I suggested to Pestalozzi to take a nice house some distance from the town for them, and then they could lead a life more approaching that in their own homes. But this proposal was also rejected. As may be supposed, the occasion was seized to hold a long discourse on the weak side of the institute, the absence of family life, and the impossibility of helping it. We then made a third proposition. As it seemed to us impossible that Pestalozzi's ideas could be realised at Yverdon under the actually existing circumstances, we suggested that he should found the institute for the poor in Argovie, which had been so long promised, and offered him our help for this purpose. He would not, however, consent. I then considered it my duty, in the interest of the child confided to my care, to leave the institute. I have no intention of justifying my attitude under these circumstances at the expense of others; I will only add a word of explanation. At this time, Schmid and Niederer, so different with regard to talents, characters, and inclinations, were already in complete opposition; with the best will in the world, it was impossible to effect a reconciliation between them; one had to take sides with the one or other of them. Pestalozzi himself sided with Schmid, whose resolute and indefatigable energy was sufficient guarantee that he would be an active helper in any reforms. I was thus, without any intention of my own, in opposition to Niederer. Although I could not share his opinions on many points, I ought to have

done justice to his enthusiasm and his self-sacrificing spirit. I was attracted by Krüsi's gentleness; but he, too, was against Schmid. My attitude as silent observer displeased the youngest masters; can I bear them ill-will on that account? I ought to have appreciated the sincere, enthusiastic, indefatigable zeal of many of them, Ramsauer, for instance, even when their teaching did not show anything new; but, misled by the *Report*, I had expected to find something new everywhere. In spite of all the imperfections, I should, nevertheless, certainly have stayed longer at Yverdon, and I should have worked there in patient and persevering hope, if I had not considered it my duty to remove the child who was intrusted to me. I left Yverdon, then, in May, 1810. Soon after, the conflict, long in abeyance, burst out openly in passionate hostilities."<sup>1</sup>

The publication of the report of the board of inspection likewise gave rise to excited polemics which lasted three years, and could not fail to injure the institute. The important publication known under the name of the *Göttengische Gelehrte Anzeigen* was particularly aggressive, and accused the Yverdon institute of bringing the pupils up in ideas contrary to religion, hostile to authority and to the aristocracy (April 13, 1810). This unjust attack provoked a vigorous reply from Niederer, *The Pestalozzi Institute to the Public*,<sup>2</sup> which only gave fresh life to the discussion.

At this time Schmid proposed to reorganise the institute and restore to it its original character of

<sup>1</sup> Raumer, *Geschichte der Pädagogik*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Vol. II, pp. 435-443.

<sup>2</sup> *Das Pestalozzische Institut an das Publikum.*

primary school, which it had completely lost; but Pestalozzi could not make up his mind to this. Then Schmid, not only on this account, but also for a reason "which only concerned himself and Niederer," left the house. This was in the course of the summer of 1810. This reason was not known for a long time, but was disclosed later on in documents published by Morf; to the causes of rivalry which already separated Niederer and Schmid was added the presence of a young teacher, Luise Segesser, with whom both had fallen in love. Fräulein Segesser preferred Niederer, and had become engaged to him.<sup>1</sup> Schmid's departure was a great blow to Pestalozzi. "My heart was torn at seeing him leave me, for I loved him as my own soul; but I could do nothing." He also had the grief of seeing some of his best colleagues leave in the same year, among them Muralt, who had had a post offered him in St. Petersburg, Von Türk, Mieg, and Hoffmann. The others considered Schmid's departure "as a great piece of good luck."<sup>2</sup> The latter, who had gone to Vienna, had published a pamphlet, entitled *Educational Establishments a Disgrace to Humanity*,<sup>3</sup> in which he unsparingly depicted the sad state of the institute. Some time after he became head-master of the primary school at Bregenz.

Peace was restored to the institute after Schmid's departure, but the void he left was never filled. Pestalozzi had now no other prop but Niederer, to whom he

<sup>1</sup> Morf, IV, 233. This engagement was, however, broken off the following year, and in 1814 Niederer became engaged to Fräulein Kasthofer.

<sup>2</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale*, etc., pp. 53, 54.

<sup>3</sup> *Erziehungsanstalten eine Schande der Menschheit*.

thus addressed himself in his New Year's Speech, 1811 : "Niederer, you who are the first of my sons, what shall I say to you? what shall I wish you? how shall I thank you? You penetrate the depths of truth, you traverse the labyrinths as if you were walking on a beaten track! . . . Friend, you are my helper, my house reposes on your heart, your eye flashes forth a ray which is its salvation, although my own weakness dreads it. Niederer, reign over my house like a propitious constellation." The same dithyramb is to be found in the speech the year following. "I need your strength more than ever for my house and for my work. . . . Niederer, my faith in what you have is not to be shaken, and my uneasiness as to what you have not diminishes with every hour."

In the course of the summer of 1810, the institute received the visit of Jullien, a French officer of high rank, inspector of reviews, who was on his way to Italy, and came to Yverdon on his way at the request of the minister of the interior, De Montalivet. Jullien remained two months at the institute, and after his arrival in Italy published his observations in a work entitled, *Spirit of Pestalozzi's Method of Education*, preceded by an introduction published separately under the title, *Report on the Educational Institute at Yverdon* (Milan, 1812). The favourable report, drawn up by him on what he saw at Yverdon, contributed to give Pestalozzi's name a great renown in France, and attracted a great number of French pupils. Some French newspapers reproached Jullien with having painted the Yverdon institute in too glowing colours; he defended himself in a letter to Mieg, one of Pestalozzi's colleagues, at the same

time expressing a wish that the institute might fulfil its promises better.

About this time Pestalozzi had the unfortunate idea of starting a printing-office in his castle. This was to continue the discussion provoked by the report of the commission of inspection. To this was added a bookseller's shop, which was, to use his own expression, "more a wasting and giving away than a selling of books."<sup>1</sup> It was certainly a most disastrous undertaking, and as a consequence, he had to appeal to his friend Vogel at Zürich and to Mieg, then at Paris, to beg a loan which should help him out of his difficulties. Vogel could not accede to his request, but Mieg went to Yverdon to see what could be done, and found a deficit of twenty thousand francs. On his advice and that of Vogel, Pestalozzi came to an arrangement, dated the 15th of November, 1813, which consisted chiefly in getting his wife to advance him six thousand francs, and in making over the school for girls, managed up to this time by his daughter-in-law, now Frau Custer, to a teacher who had had the scholastic management since 1808, Fräulein Rosette Kasthofer. Fräulein Kasthofer married Niederer in the January following.

In consequence of this arrangement, Pestalozzi's wife and Frau Custer went to Neuhof in April, 1814, accompanied by the faithful Lisabeth, the housekeeper of the institute, who had been dismissed, so that Pestalozzi remained alone with Niederer and his wife, both of whom were as incapable as he was of wisely managing the establishment. The situation, far from improving, became more and more critical, the more so as the young foreign pupil-

<sup>1</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale*, p. 65.

teachers had almost all left, and their places had not been filled. Happily Jullien, who had confided his three sons to Pestalozzi's care, resolved to come to his aid, and persuaded him to put the management of his undertaking in the hands of a "Board of Economic Administration," composed of notable personages in Yverdon. This cession took place on the 28th of November, 1814, and raised the credit of the establishment in the eyes of the public for some time.

But a grave blow had been struck at the prosperity of the institute. Then it was that Schmid, who found himself threatened with the loss of his situation at Bregenz, as this town had again come under Austrian rule, communicated his fears to his friends at Yverdon. Immediately Niederer himself wrote, on the 16th of December, 1814, to invite him to come back, declaring that "the present state of the institute was completely favourable to his return," for the economic difficulties had been removed, and from all sides "pupils, Spanish, French, and English, had been announced in sufficient numbers." He declared besides that he felt himself "superior to egotism and ambition."<sup>1</sup> Pestalozzi and he were "ready to do everything they could to induce him to come." Schmid, who had kept on good terms with the institute, and had already spent some days there in the course of September, 1813, answered with enthusiasm that he would be happy to come back to Pestalozzi, declaring he, too, felt himself "superior to egotism and ambition," and in accordance with his promise he returned to the institute at Easter, 1815, after having persuaded Pestalozzi to send for his family again.

<sup>1</sup> Morf, IV, 399.

In January, 1814, the Austrian authorities had ordered the castle at Yverdon to be turned into a military hospital, whereupon the municipality of this town sent a deputation to Alexander, the Emperor of Russia, then luckily at Basle. The Tsar received the deputation, headed by Pestalozzi, most amiably, and said, "I know why you have come; reassure yourself; you need not say another word; your affair is arranged; you will not be disturbed in your house." Then he held a long conversation with Pestalozzi, discussing what the latter had done and had attempted to do, and some months later he sent him the cross of the order of St. Vladimir, renewing the assurance of his homage and of his sympathy with Pestalozzi's efforts.<sup>1</sup>

Some time after, the king of Prussia having come to Neufchâtel, Pestalozzi wanted, though very ill just then, to go and thank him too for the interest which he had taken in his work and in the cause of the education of the lower classes.

In the course of the same year the institute received the visit of one of Pestalozzi's admirers, the Prussian chancellor, Von Beyme, who came accompanied by his wife to Yverdon. But his enthusiasm yielded to a complete disenchantment when he saw the real state of things. "If this establishment last another year," he said, before he left Yverdon, "it will be a great wonder," for in the teaching he saw there were defects "which one would have blushed for in the lowest of village schools."<sup>2</sup>

Ramsauer gives us an interesting account of the

<sup>1</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale*, pp. 78-81.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 78.

visits of foreigners, which shows what importance Pestalozzi attached to them and what illusions they gave rise to in his mind: —

“Every time that a new visitor came, Pestalozzi went in search of the masters in whom he had most confidence, and said to them: ‘Here is an important personage who wishes to examine everything in detail. Show him what we can do, take your best pupils, your exercise books, and make him understand what we do and what we desire to do.’ Hundreds and hundreds of times people came merely out of curiosity, often utterly foolish and ignorant persons, who came to Yverdon simply because it was *the fashion*; but Pestalozzi took them all for important personages. We had to interrupt the ordinary class-teaching on their account and hold a kind of examination of the pupils. It was not unusual in summer for strangers to come to the castle four or five times in the same day, and we had to interrupt the lessons two, three, and four times on their account.

“In 1814 the arrival of Prince Esterhazy was announced at Yverdon. Pestalozzi, on hearing the news, ran all over the house crying: ‘Ramsauer, Ramsauer, where are you? Come quickly with your best pupils, in gymnastics, drawing, arithmetic, geometry; you must take them to the Maison-Rouge (the hotel at which the prince was staying); he is a very important personage, immensely rich; he has thousands of serfs in Hungary and Austria, he will not fail to found schools and to set his serfs free, if we succeed in gaining him for our cause.’ I took some fifteen pupils with me to the hotel, and Pestalozzi presented me to the prince in the following terms: ‘This is



the teacher of my pupils ; this young man came to me fifteen years ago from the canton of Appenzell with other poor children. He was educated by the free development of his individual faculties, and now he has become a teacher himself. You see from that, that the poor have just as many, if not more, faculties than the rich ; but among the poor, these faculties are rarely developed, and then not methodically. That is why the amelioration of primary schools is so important. But he is going to show you himself, better than I could, the results we obtain. I leave him then with you.' I then began to question the pupils, to talk, explain, and shout with so much zeal, that I was soon quite hoarse, and never doubted but what the prince was completely persuaded. At the end of an hour Pestalozzi came back. The prince expressed his satisfaction at what he had seen. We took our leave, and going downstairs Pestalozzi said to me, 'He is convinced, quite convinced, and will certainly go and found schools in his Hungarian domains.' When he reached the bottom, he cried with one of his favourite expletives : 'What have I done to my arm ? It hurts me ; look, it is all swollen, and I cannot bend it.' And, as a matter of fact, his very wide sleeve had become too tight. I looked at the enormous key in the door of the Maison-Rouge, and I said to Pestalozzi, 'Oh, you must have knocked against this key, an hour ago, when we went up to the prince.' On looking at the key, we saw that Pestalozzi had struck it such a blow with his elbow that he had bent it ; and in his enthusiasm and his joy had remained a whole hour without noticing it. Such was the fire which burnt within him still at seventy, when he saw the pros-

pect of doing good. I could quote many other examples."<sup>1</sup>

Schmid's return was soon almost as much regretted as it had before been desired. "He came back," Pestalozzi tells us, "but he came back to be, as he had always been, a stumbling-block for many, a stumbling-block for all who, in their weakness and superficiality, imagined themselves on heights on which they were not in reality."<sup>2</sup> On his arrival, he found Pestalozzi in despair and ready to go back to Neuhof. He succeeded in dissuading him from this idea, promising to raise the prosperity of the institute. He set to work at once and made radical reforms. "He first reduced the teaching staff, which was almost as numerous as at his departure, although the number of the pupils had diminished by half, and also reduced the salaries by half, although he increased the number of teaching hours." To give an idea of the "dilapidation" which prevailed in the economic administration of the establishment, Pestalozzi tells us that he had then for seventy-eight pupils, twenty-two teachers to whom they gave "board and lodging, light and laundry, besides an annual salary which represented a sum of ten thousand livres (Swiss money)."<sup>3</sup> Finally, the printing-office was suppressed. To compensate for this Schmid fulfilled a dream Pestalozzi had long cherished,<sup>4</sup> the publication of a complete edition of his works. He went himself to Stuttgart in Febru-

<sup>1</sup> Ramsauer, *Kurze Skizze meines pädagogischen Lebens*, pp. 42-43.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 88.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 90.

<sup>4</sup> "I hope," Pestalozzi wrote to Fellenberg on the 15th of November, 1793, "that after having made enough sacrifices . . . I shall nevertheless be able, after a lapse of some years, to make a small fortune by the publication of my works, which have been

ary, 1817, to see Cotta, the publisher, and negotiated for most advantageous terms for Pestalozzi.

The measures taken by Schmid with regard to the staff, advisable as they might be from an economic point of view, naturally resulted in new bitterness and in consequence in new difficulties for Pestalozzi. A greater trouble was in store for him, for his wife died at the age of seventy-six, after a few days illness, on the 12th of December. From that time quite alone, Pestalozzi threw himself completely into the arms of Schmid, whom he considered as his saviour. Schmid, henceforth, ruled him completely, to the detriment of Niederer. Things came to such a pitch that Niederer threatened to leave the institute, if Schmid continued to behave as he did. Pestalozzi had great trouble in pacifying them, and the truce was not of long duration. A more serious conflict between several masters of the institute took place some time after, likewise occasioned by Schmid's tyranny. Sixteen inmates of the house, among whom were Niederer, Krüsi, Ramsauer, and Blockmann, sent in their resignation. But this time Pestalozzi followed his own preference, and declared he would rather lose them all than reduce the influence of Schmid, who alone had the power to save him. All except Niederer and Krüsi accordingly left the establishment in the course of the summer of 1816. They left without bearing Pestalozzi any malice, whom, on the contrary, they pitied from the bottom of their hearts. Krüsi, himself, in spite of his desire of conciliation, was obliged to leave a short time after. He opened a school of his own at

most carefully revised. I count all the more on the assistance of my friends in raising a subscription."

Yverdon, for which Pestalozzi generously gave him his first pupils, then later on he went to Trogen, and finally became head-master of a training college at Gais.

This break-up struck a terrible blow at the institute, which then numbered some hundred pupils, among whom were many English boys, for it left it with hardly any masters just at a time when it was becoming prosperous again. Jullien, who had brought Pestalozzi eighty pupils from France, and was now settled at Yverdon (since Easter, 1816), left the following year, offended, it is said, by Schmid. He nevertheless remained a most enthusiastic partisan of Pestalozzi's institute.

The misunderstanding between Niederer and Schmid grew worse and worse, so much so that in consequence of very unpleasant occurrences Niederer communicated to Pestalozzi on the 22d of January, 1817, his resolution of leaving the establishment. In spite of Pestalozzi's supplications, nothing could induce him to alter this resolution, and all that Pestalozzi could obtain was that he would continue to give the religious instruction to those pupils who were being prepared for confirmation, which was to take place at Whitsuntide. On the day of the ceremony, Niederer, after having preached the usual sermon, considered it necessary, without letting Pestalozzi know his intention beforehand, to announce from the pulpit his departure, in terms which Pestalozzi considered offensive. He accordingly rose to protest, and said "Niederer was there to confirm his pupils and edify his hearers by the ceremony, and not to discuss in the pulpit the enmity which subsisted between them."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale*, p. 107.

Niederer's departure did not put an end to the hostilities. A disagreement having arisen between Pestalozzi and Frau Niederer on the question of the settlement of the accounts of the establishment for girls, which had been made over to her, Pestalozzi thought to put an end to the matter by giving a receipt in full for anything that might be owing to him. Niederer took great offence at this act of generosity and insisted on a businesslike settlement of the accounts. The excitement which this affair caused Pestalozzi came at the same time as a new revolt of the masters of the institute, who threatened to discontinue their work if Pestalozzi did not raise their salaries and allow them "to drink coffee after dinner" with him.<sup>1</sup> The combined effect of these dissensions excited Pestalozzi to such a pitch that Schmid, fearing for his reason, was compelled to take him up the Jura Mountains, to a little village called "les Bullets." The fresh mountain air soon soothed his nervous irritation, although he remained, as he says himself, in a certain "condition of weakness of mind, or rather of absent-mindedness joined to a very high degree of worry and discouragement."<sup>2</sup> He spent some weeks among the mountains and felt himself "a free man again," and so happy that he did not want to return to his institute, which seemed like "a hell he had happily escaped from."<sup>3</sup> He even embodied his sorrows in a poem which has been preserved for us by Fellenberg.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale*, p. 110.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 126.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 127.

<sup>4</sup> *Pestalozzi's unedirte Briefe*, p. 17.

Regenbogen, Regenbogen,  
 Du verkündest Gottes Wonne!  
 Schein auch mir mit deiner Farben  
 Mildein Glanze, schein in meinen  
 Wilden, lebenslangen Sturm!  
 Ründe mir den besseren Morgen,  
 Ründe mir den besseren Tag,  
 Regenbogen, Regenbogen!

In der Stürme Tagen  
 Hat mich Gott getragen.  
 Meine Seele lobe Gott!  
 Muß ich sterben  
 Eh' du mir erscheinst,  
 Und mir Freuden bringst  
 Und den besseren Tag;  
 Muß ich austrinken  
 Den Kelch des Zanks,  
 Den Kelch der Unversöhnlichkeit  
 Bis auf seine Hesen?  
 Muß ich sterben, eh' mein Friede  
 Kommt, der Friede, den ich suche?  
 Ich erkenne meine Schuld,  
 Ich erkenne meine Schwäche,  
 Und in Liebe und mit Thränen  
 Verzeih' ich Allen ihre Schuld:  
 Doch im Tode find ich Frieden,  
 Und im Tode wird erscheinen  
 Mir mein bessrer Tag!  
 Ränder meiner bessern Tage,  
 Lieblich wirst du dann erscheinen  
 Ueber meinen öden Grust,  
 Regenbogen, Regenbogen!

Wie der frischgefallne Schnee,  
 Wie des Winters helle Flocken,  
 Die beim Tode meiner Gattin,  
 In der Sonne lieblich glänzend,  
 Sanken auf ihr offenes Grab:

Regenbogen, Regenbogen,  
 So erscheine dann auch mir,  
 Lieblich, lieblich, wenn ich sterbe.  
 In der Stürme Tagen  
 Hat mich Gott getragen,  
 Meine Seele lobe Gott!

Rainbow, rainbow, you announce God's delight! Appear to me, too, in your colours and mild splendour, appear in the wild storm of my life! Announce to me a better morn, a better day, rainbow, rainbow.

God has borne me through the days of storms. Praise God, O my soul! Must I die before you appear to me and bring me joy and a better day; must I drink the cup of hostility, the cup of unforgiving enmity, to the very dregs? Must I die, before my peace, the peace I seek, has come? I acknowledge my fault, I acknowledge my weakness, and in love and with tears I forgive all their faults; but I find peace in death, and in death will appear to me my better day! Rainbow, rainbow, you announcer of better days, beautiful will you then appear over my dreary grave!

Like fresh-fallen snow, like the white flakes of winter, which at the death of my wife fell into her open grave, gleaming in the sun; rainbow, rainbow, appear in your beauty for me when I die. God has borne me through the days of storms. Praise God, O my soul.

On his return from the mountains, Niederer and his wife recommenced hostilities, and the affair dragged its weary length through a correspondence which waxed more and more bitter and only made things worse, without any possibility of coming to an understanding. Not until seven years later did the parties concerned determine finally to appeal to law. Meanwhile Niederer announced to the public that in order not to let Pestalozzi's ideas perish he had joined with Krüsi and Conrad Näf (a Zürich teacher, who had

some years before started an institute for deaf-mutes at Yverdon), and that their establishment represented the true Pestalozzian tradition.

Jullien, who still had two sons at the institute and was greatly concerned about Pestalozzi's situation, which grew worse and worse, thought he had found a means of delivering him by advising him to make over the management of the establishment to Fellenberg, with whom he was again on friendly terms. Fellenberg fell in very willingly with this proposition and wrote to Pestalozzi from Berne, on the 23d of August, 1817, to suggest the idea to him.

Pestalozzi consented to go to Hofwyl, where Fellenberg made him an offer which seemed to him so advantageous that he commissioned Schmid to continue the negotiations. Schmid, considering a trial necessary to see if concord could reign between the two persons concerned, suggested to Fellenberg that he should invite Pestalozzi to come and stay with him at his castle at Diemerswyl, which was about half a league from Hofwyl. Fellenberg profited by this visit to make Pestalozzi sign, on the 14th of October, a bond which, while relieving him from all pecuniary anxiety and assuring the future of his grandson, gave him the hope of at length realising the dream of his youth, viz., the foundation of an establishment for the poor, to which the whole sum raised by the subscription for Pestalozzi's work was to be devoted. On the other hand, Pestalozzi gave up all his independence, and although he had skilfully secured his right of not being separated from Schmid, in reality the latter's influence was annihilated. Covered with shame at what he had done, Pestalozzi confessed to Schmid



as soon as he returned, telling him he still counted on him to save him. We can picture to ourselves the vexation of Schmid, who did all he could to cancel the agreement, pointing out to Pestalozzi that he could not accept the partnership. But Fellenberg opposed him energetically, and a most violent quarrel took place, which ended in a definite rupture. Jullien was deeply vexed, and removed his two sons from the institute, their departure being followed by that of other French pupils.

Although we may admit that Schmid was not absolutely disinterested in this affair, we must recognise that he defended Pestalozzi's interests better than he could have done himself. He made him comprehend that it was much more essential for him "to work to spread, defend, and establish on a more solid foundation his ideas on elementary education, than to utilise the methods, as yet not fully matured, in an establishment for the poor."<sup>1</sup> That was his aim when he negotiated the agreement with Cotta for him, and when he had appealed to foreign courts to take an interest in the publication of Pestalozzi's works. The success of the subscription organised by his efforts likewise attested to the truth of his remarks. Among the subscribers were the Emperor of Russia, who gave five thousand roubles, the king of Bavaria, who gave seven hundred florins, and the king of Prussia, who subscribed four hundred thalers. At the end of the year the sum total of the subscriptions had reached one hundred thousand francs, the half of which, according to the agreement, was to be paid over to Pestalozzi. The latter, in his joy, immediately determined

<sup>1</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale*, p. 132.

to devote this sum of fifty thousand francs to "the education of the lower classes and the poor," *i.e.* the foundation of an orphanage, and solemnly announced his intention in a speech made on his seventy-second birthday, on the 12th of January, 1818.<sup>1</sup> On this occasion he sought a reconciliation with Niederer, and with Krüsi, whom he would have liked to interest in his new undertaking ; but he failed in his attempt.

Pestalozzi chose, as the site of his orphanage, the village of Clindy, situated ten minutes' walk from Yverdon, and opened it on the 13th of September, 1818, with a dozen orphans, boys and girls, who were to be brought up "as poor children, and to be prepared for an existence suitable to the poor," *i.e.* "to be preserved from all temptations of wealth, of useless enjoyment and desires difficult to gratify in poverty."<sup>2</sup> The pupils were to remain five years in the orphanage and be prepared for the calling of teachers. The number of pupils was soon increased to thirty, among them some paying pupils, whom Pestalozzi unwisely accepted. Finally, in consequence of an appeal made to the English public, a number of pupils came from England. Greaves, an enthusiastic admirer of Pestalozzi's ideas, then staying at Yverdon, offered to teach his own language free of charge. Then they found themselves compelled to add instruction in French and Latin, so that the orphanage lost more and more its original character, and became an establishment similar to that at Yverdon. Pestalozzi himself found it quite natural, in 1820, to join the pupils of the orphanage to those of the institute, in

<sup>1</sup> *Rede an sein Haus*, 1818.

<sup>2</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale*, pp. 194, 195.

the castle occupied by the latter. The girls were installed in the second floor.

The Yverdon municipality showed small satisfaction at this fusion of the two establishments, which completely changed the character of the institute, "On the one hand by joining to it a school for the the poor, on the other by trying to bring the interior arrangements into conformity with the luxurious tastes and habits of the English, of whom there was now a considerable number in the institute."<sup>1</sup> However, Pestalozzi, who had already obtained, in July, 1817, the renewal of the concession of the castle for a period of five years after his death, "in favour of the persons whom he might designate to succeed him,"<sup>2</sup> had taken his grandson, Gottlieb, into partnership in the undertaking, and asked that this period might be extended to fifteen or twenty years. At this news, Niederer, Krüsi, and Näf, who seemed for the last three years to have suspended hostilities, made representations to the municipality to prevent the negotiations from being successful, pointing out that it was impossible for them to live in peace at Yverdon, if Schmid remained master of the institute. They gained the day, and Pestalozzi's request was refused.

War then broke out more vigorously than ever. An action which Schmid had brought in 1821 against Niederer, Krüsi, and Näf for calumnious assertions, made by them against him in their letter to the municipality, provoked a wordy war, in which abuse was freely interchanged in newspapers and pamphlets. In his turn Niederer brought an action against Schmid for a libel contained in a pamphlet of Schmid's, en-

<sup>1</sup> De Guimps, p. 400.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*

titled *Truth and Error in Pestalozzi's Memoirs demonstrated by Facts*,<sup>1</sup> which appeared in 1822. Pestalozzi was also implicated, as an accomplice of Schmid, in this libel. On the intervention of the government of Vaud, an umpire was appointed, who was to try to reconcile the parties; but just as they were on the point of coming to an understanding, the negotiations failed for some trivial cause. Pestalozzi and Schmid accordingly had to appear before the court of law at Yverdon, but were acquitted. In his turn Pestalozzi attacked Niederer for another abusive article, and public opinion was roused to such a pitch, that the Council of State ordered W. du Thon, the prefect of Yverdon, to appeal to both parties, and make them understand the necessity of putting an end to this scandal. The decision was accepted and signed by the belligerents on the 31st of December, 1823.

These deplorable incidents had naturally struck a serious blow at the renown and prosperity of the institute, and hastened its fall. The final blow was struck by the dismissal of Schmid, which his enemies obtained from the Council of State, in the shape of a decree of expulsion, dated the 6th of October, 1824. Then Pestalozzi determined to leave Yverdon and transfer his orphanage to Neuhof. This was a plan which he had long had in his mind, and he counted on taking with him as teaching-staff the pupils he had trained at Clindy, and prepared for a teaching career. Unfortunately, not one was willing to accompany him, and, forgetful of all they owed their benefactor, they left him to turn to account elsewhere the instruction they

<sup>1</sup> *Wahrheit und Irrthum in Pestalozzis Lebensschicksalen durch Thatsachen dargelegt*, 1822.

had received from him, saying, "It was too much to ask from their gratitude, and they were not bound to sacrifice themselves to such an extent for him."<sup>1</sup> There was, moreover, nothing left of the money which the publication of his works had brought Pestalozzi. He thus found himself helpless, and was obliged to declare publicly, on the 17th of March, 1824, that it was henceforth impossible for him "to fulfil the hopes which he had awakened in the hearts of so many generous philanthropists and friends of education by his project of founding an orphanage."<sup>2</sup> He was forced to close his institute, which had fallen into utter decay, and on the 2d of March, 1825, he left Yverdon, accompanied by Schmid and the four last pupils, two of whom were Spaniards, for Neuhof. This was already occupied by his grandson, Gottlieb, and his family. "Truly," said he, "this parting caused me so much sorrow, that it seemed as if I had put an end to my life."<sup>3</sup> The castle at Yverdon was shortly after made over to a boys' school founded by Krüsi and at that time under the management of Rank.

<sup>1</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale*, p. 237.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 241.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 242.

## CHAPTER VI

### NEUHOF AGAIN (1825-1827)

Pestalozzi's last years. His *Swan's Dirge* and his *Fates of My Life*. — Fresh troubles. — Pestalozzi's death.

PESTALOZZI survived the collapse of his work only two years. He thought to raise means by the publication of a French and an English edition of his works, and sent Schmid to Paris and London to try to put his plan into execution, and find subscribers. And as he did not give up his hope of founding an orphanage at Neuhof, for which the building was already begun, he recommended Schmid to utilise his stay in France and England, to gain information of the industries which might be suitable for his establishment. But none of these projects could be realised.

During Schmid's journey, Pestalozzi, more vigorous than ever, occupied himself with retracing his life and expounding his doctrines for the last time. This formed the subject of his two last works, the *Swan's Dirge*<sup>1</sup> and *My Fortunes as Superintendent of my Educational Establishments at Burgdorf and Yverdon*,<sup>2</sup> which are permeated by a profound melancholy. They were published in 1826.

In May, 1825, he was enthusiastically elected presi-

<sup>1</sup> *Schwanengesang*.

<sup>2</sup> *Meine Lebensschicksale als Vorsteher meiner Erziehungsanstalten in Burgdorf und Iferten*.

dent of the Helvetic Society of Schinznach, and in his capacity of president made a speech *On Fatherland and Education* at the meeting which took place at Langenthal on the 26th of April, 1826.

Shortly after, on the occasion of a visit which he and Schmid paid to the orphanage at Beuggen, near Rheinfalden, on the 21st of June, 1826, a touching festival was organised in his honour. He was also present, on the 21st of November following, at the meeting of the Society for the Promotion of Education (*Kulturgesellschaft*) of the District of Brugg, at which his *Attempt at a Sketch on the Essence of the Idea of Elementary Education*<sup>1</sup> was read.

But new troubles awaited him. As a consequence of dissensions which took place between the wife of his grandson, Gottlieb, and Lisabeth, the latter had had to leave Neuhof in 1824, and had gone to Gais. Pestalozzi also had difficulties with the orphanage at Gais, where Lisabeth had placed her idiot son, on a question of money started by Schmid. Pestalozzi, summoned before the court at Brugg by the board of the orphanage, was deeply affected by this proceeding. On the other hand, the publication of his *Memoirs* provoked a new flood of calumnies, inspired by Fellenberg and printed in the newspapers. A most outrageous pamphlet was moreover published by a former master at the institute, a man named Biber. The reading of this pamphlet caused Pestalozzi to have a violent attack of fever. He wished to emerge from the silent reserve which he had imposed on himself until then and draw up a refutation, but he was too

<sup>1</sup> *Versuch einer Skizze über das Wesen der Idee der Elementarbildung, etc.*

unwell, and only had the strength to dictate his last wishes to the pastor of Birr on the 15th of February, 1827. In this document, he expresses his regret at not being able to live a few months longer, so as to be able to justify himself and Schmid and also his desire that the latter might take his place and be a father to his children. He repeated that Schmid had been his saviour, and that he died his debtor. Finally he blessed his friends and forgave his enemies.<sup>1</sup>

He was moved to Brugg, but died two days after, in the morning of the 17th of February. His coffin was carried to the cemetery at Birr by the teachers in the neighbourhood, with a very small number of friends and children from the village school as only mourners. In 1846 the government of the canton of Argovie had a monument erected in front of the new school at Birr, and thither his remains were carried.

His epitaph appears on the following page.

<sup>1</sup>Fellenberg's *Klage*, pp. 59-63. See this document *in extenso* in Guillaume, pp. 430-432.



Hier ruht

Heinrich Pestalozzi

Geboren in Zürich am 12. Januar 1746,  
Gestorben in Brugg den 17. Hornung 1827.

Ketter der Armen in Neuhof,  
Prediger des Volkes in Lienhard und Gertrud,  
In Stanz Vater der Waisen,  
In Burgdorf und Münchenbuchsee  
Gründer der neuen Volksschule,  
In Yfferten Erzieher der Menschheit.  
Mensch, Christ, Bürger.  
Alles für Andere, für sich Nichts!  
Segen seinem Namen!

(Here lies Henry Pestalozzi, born in Zürich on the 12th of January, 1746, died at Brugg on the 17th of February, 1827. Saviour of the poor at Neuhof, Preacher to the people in "Lienhard und Gertrud," Father of the Fatherless in Stanz, Founder of the new elementary school at Burgdorf and Münchenbuchsee, educator of humanity in Yverdon. Man, Christian, Citizen. Everything for others, nothing for himself! Blessings be on his name!)



## PART II

### PESTALOZZI'S EDUCATIONAL THEORY

Mein Leben hat nichts Ganzes, nichts Vollendetes hervorgebracht ; meine Schrift kann auch nichts Ganzes und nichts Vollendetes leisten.

(My life has produced nothing whole, nothing complete ; my work cannot then either be a whole, nor complete.) ✓

PESTALOZZI, *Schwanengesang*, Vorrede.

20

## INDEX

### OF THE WORKS OF PESTALOZZI REFERRED TO IN THIS SECOND PART

TITLES OF THE WORK		VOL. OF MANN'S ED.
X Lienhard und Gertrud (1781-1787).	Leonard and Gertrude.	I & II
Abendstunde eines Einsiedlers (1780).	A Hermit's Evening Hour.	III
Aus dem Schweizerblatt: Von der Erziehung (1782).	From the "Schweizerblatt": On Education.	III
Pestalozzi's Brief an einen Freund über seinen Aufenthalt in Stanz (1796).	Pestalozzi's Letter to a Friend on his Stay at Stanz.	III
Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt (1801).	How Gertrude teaches her Children.	III
Ansichten und Erfahrungen, die Idee der Elementarbildung betreffend (1807).	Views and Experiences with Regard to the Elementary Education.	III
X Über die Idee der Elementarbildung (1809).	On the Idea of the Elementary Education.	III
Reden an sein Haus (1808-1813).	Pestalozzi's Discourse to his House.	IV
+ Schwanengesang (1826).	Swan's Dirge.	IV

NOTE. — The Roman numbers refer to the numbers of the paragraphs of the editions of the *Selected Works* published by Fr. Mann.

## BOOK I

### NECESSITY AND AIM OF EDUCATION — WAYS AND MEANS

#### CHAPTER I

##### EDUCATION FROM THE SOCIAL POINT OF VIEW

Necessity of education from the social point of view. — Necessity of education for the people. — Education is a social duty.

##### *Necessity of Education from the Social Point of View—*

Man left to himself is naturally idle, ignorant, improvident, thoughtless, careless, credulous, timid, and full of unbounded desires. And the dangers which his weakness encounters, and the obstacles placed in the way of his desires, make him also tortuous, cunning, crafty, suspicious, violent, bold, revengeful, and cruel. That is man such as he would inevitably become if he were abandoned to himself and deprived of culture; he would steal as readily as he would eat, and he would kill as readily as sleep. His need is his right, his desires are the foundation of his right, and his demands know no other limits than his idleness and the impossibility of obtaining more.

*Lienhard u.  
Gertrud,  
IV, § 41.*

It is then absolutely necessary for society, if it wishes the individual to be useful, or even merely en-

durable, to make of him something quite different to what he naturally is.

The whole social value of man, *i.e.* the profit which society ought to gain by those of his faculties which may be turned to account, depends then on institutions, morals, methods of education, and on the laws which have for their aim his improvement and adaptation to the social order, by the repression of his natural instincts; for Nature, far from preparing him for society, has on the contrary put the greatest obstacles in himself. Man remains the original, primitive man of Nature in proportion as he lacks social culture; he remains the weak and dangerous being which the denizen of the forest is, on the one hand, as useless as he is dangerous to society, on the other, deprived of its advantages. It would be better for him then to remain in the forests; at least he would be free and would not curse his chain.

But it is by no means easy to transform the natural man; to do that, we must have all the wisdom of a legislator perfectly acquainted with human nature, or if you like, for both are true, the piety of an angelic, adorable virtue.

Every gap in civil society, every check in social life, every hope of regaining by force or cunning his natural liberty, or the power of gratifying his natural instincts outside the pale of society, rekindles the spark of revolt always hidden in the heart of the man of Nature, and quickens the always existent germs of our primitive instincts, and perpetually paralyses the forces which our social culture opposes to these instincts.

Against all this the legislator must direct his efforts, if he desire to make men happy by social organisation,

and to enable him to enjoy the first benefits of the social state, justice and security, which are impossible of attainment if men remain without culture. All that is only possible after the individuals have been freed from their chief faults and from the vices inherent in their natural condition.

A child is perfectly educated if he has learned to take care of what will later on belong to him, to keep it in order, and to make use of it for the welfare of those belonging to him. *Lienhard u. Gertrud*, III, § 19.

X The aim of education is *to prepare men to be what they will be in society*. The child must be taught to reflect, so that he may be open; prudent, *Ibid.*, IV, so that he may not be compelled to be mis- § 40.

trustful; industrious, so that he may not become a beggar; sincere, that he may inspire confidence; reasonable, so that he may have confidence in himself. In short, he must be so brought up that he will be *something* wherever he may be, which is very different to not being able to do anything, except with his mouth or on paper.

One ought to try and make people what they will be in society according to their abilities, and for that one should in every case employ the man who understands a thing best, whether it is a question of ploughing a field or catching rats or mice.

*Necessity of Education for the People* — Some people say it is of no use to give the common people too good an education. There must be moles as well as other creatures. Otherwise God would not have created any. And how miserable these creatures would be underground if they had good eyes. *Idee der Elem.*, §§ 160, 161.

*Education is a Social Duty*—Pestalozzi believes that all God's gifts are good. He considers that it is not possible that the rightful, natural cultivation of these gifts could ever be to the detriment of the human race; on the contrary, the cultivation of these gifts, far from being left to the option of men, is at the centre, nay, is the centre of the range of the duties of the human race. This opinion is moreover justified and confirmed by the first unvarying principles of religion and Christianity.



## CHAPTER II

### AIM AND THEORY OF EDUCATION

General aim and general principles of education.—Adaptation to individual conditions.—Worthlessness of general rules of education.—Superiority of practice to theory.—Uselessness of philosophers.—Superiority of the lower classes from the point of view of education.—Models to follow.—Evil influence of schools.—Definition and fundamental principle of education.—Advantages of the education of former times.—Games as methods of education.—The family and not the school is the centre of education.—Responsibility of rulers.—Primary education is founded on the primary need of mankind.—Disadvantages of general rule in education.—The threefold aim of education: to fix the attention, to form the judgment, and to elevate the sentiment.—Superiority of home influence to books and methods.—Verbal education and practical education.—Disadvantages of general *a priori* principles for the knowledge of truth.—Special or professional training.

#### *General Aim and General Principles of Education —*

The aim of education is not to turn out good tailors, bootmakers, tradesmen, or soldiers, but to turn out tailors, bootmakers, tradesmen, and soldiers who are, in the highest meaning of the word, men.

*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt, X, § 22.*

Consequently the aim of all education and instruction is and can be no other than the harmonious development of the powers and faculties of human nature.

*Aim not at making men who will*

Human nature in the whole range of its dispositions, powers, necessities, and relations is not only the point of starting and centre of education, but also the last aim, the exclusive object of its task.

*Idee der Elem.*, § 13.

To live, to be happy in his state of life, and to become a useful member of society is the destiny of man, is the aim of the education of children.

*Von der Erziehung*, § 1.

Consequently the careful use of the ways and means by which every child, in his own state of life, may be naturally and easily brought to the talents, sentiments, judgments, and attachments by which he becomes happy in his state of life and a useful member of society, is the foundation of every good education.

The child must be considered at every stage of education and of instruction as a whole.

*Idee der Elem.*, § 194.

It is not a question of merely cultivating the intellect, but of cultivating man as a whole.

*Ibid.*, § 198.

The art of pedagogy must, above all, cause, or at any rate permit, *Nature* to ripen in its own work, and never connect its processes to the unripened force of Nature; otherwise they never will and never can ripen.

*Ibid.*, § 247.

"A child who knows how to pray, work, and think is said to be already half educated." Pestalozzi is of this opinion, and declares that his elementary education attains this result.

*Schwanengesang*, § 91.

*Adaptation to Individual Conditions* — Diverse as are the circumstances of men, diverse as are their needs, their customs, and their attachments, just so diverse are the means and ways of educating every man to those sentiments and talents, through the cultivation of which he will probably become a more satisfied and a happier man in his state of life. *Von der Erziehung, §§ 1-11.*

*Worthlessness of General Rules of Education* — The general rules of education which apply to all climates, all forms of government, and all callings are one and all of as much value as similar Sunday sermons, which so often and so much edify whole congregations, and on the other hand so seldom help a single man on the right path.

*Superiority of Practice to Theory* — However, it is good in the world that while the teachers of men discourse vaguely from their heights to the people on what is right, women in country cottages execute with precision what the former one and all talk to the winds, when they speak of things they do not practise themselves.

*Uselessness of Philosophers* — It is above all good in the subject of education that the domestic circumstances of the common people, consequently of the generality of men, are such that almost everywhere parents necessarily, naturally, and spontaneously hit upon what is most important in their state of life and in their circumstances for the education of their children. If it were not so, and if men had to wait for the wise to give them food for their children, the human race would of a truth die out in all the four quarters of the globe.

*Superiority of the Lower Classes from the Point of View of Education* — In fact, whichever way we look, the respectable common man is better educated for his needs and for his position than the people, small and great, of the upper classes, who have fallen into the hands of the ranks of the philosophical boys who, by dint of study, of argument on abstract subjects, and by abandonment to their feelings, daily lose more of the sense of sight and of hearing, and therefore can make nothing of housework, either for themselves or their pupils.

*Models to follow* — We know that experience is the seal of truth, let it then be our lode star. Those men have been best educated for their position and their destiny who can best manage their households and their business.

Look at the mansions of those noblemen, the houses of those citizens, and the cottages of those peasants whose prosperity has lasted for centuries, for there the principles of the true education of men have been likewise practised for centuries, and you will see that the household ways of all these people, however diverse their rank, have been essentially, absolutely identical and very simple. You will invariably see that husband and wife have learned from father and grandfather the manners and customs which will make the happiness of their family in future centuries, as they have done in the past. You will note that these people owe nothing to their schools, nor to methods of education. Whenever these families have died out, they have done so because the education of the children has not been in harmony with their state of life.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100.

*Evil Influence of Schools.* — The chief causes of the evil are to be looked for in universities and schools, where the education, even if good in itself, is too general and too artificial. The professional careers of professors, clergymen, and barristers, in short of all whose education has been most artificial, offer most examples of this family decay. x

Wherever this decay has taken place, it is because the children have been imprudently or forcibly weaned from the attachment to their station and to their father's profession, and because ordinary family education has been neglected. }

Consequently all methods of education which lead to these results are defective.

*Definition and Fundamental Principle of Education* —

The education of men is nothing else than the filing of every ring of the great chain which connects humanity and makes it a whole, and the mistakes of education consist in taking each ring of the chain separately to work at it, as if it were a whole in itself, and did not belong to the whole chain, and as if the strength and futility of every ring were due to the fact that it was gilt, silvered, or even set with precious stones, and not that it was firmly attached to the next rings to it, and that it had been made strong and supple enough to follow daily all the movements of the chain in all its windings. Lienhard u.  
Gertrud,  
III, § 70.

If man is to become what he ought to be, he must be as a child, and do as a child, what makes him happy as a child. He must be as a child in everything he can be, but not more, without spoiling himself for what he will become. Von der  
Erziehung,  
§§ 12-46.

in his position and rank of life as a man. That is the first principle of a good education.

*Advantages of the Education of Former Times* — That is why Pestalozzi has a respect for the education of former times. The great secret of the education of our forefathers consisted in that in all ranks of life they profited as soon as possible by the help of the children in the work of the house. This aim led them infinitely more easily to the chief points of view of the true education of man than our new theories.

When we examine the results produced by this old method of education embodied in those men who by their life, by their management of their households, by their conspicuously wise conduct in their ranks of life and in their calling prove that they have been well educated, we almost always observe that the actual causes of their excellent education are not their university studies, not scientific system, but their domestic situation, the circumstances, opinions, and customs of their parents and relations, and a thousand other things which the present time neglects as insignificant.

Thus a wise father says, I owe my good fortune and happiness, and the happiness of my house, to one of my father's servants, whose strictness compelled me to do hundreds of things in the house which, but for him, I should have neglected. Now I see clearly that that has made me what I am.

My father, says another, brought me up as if I should have to earn by my own exertions everything he left me, and experience has proved to me that without this wise precaution I should certainly have lost all he did leave me.

Again, a third would say, I was kept to my calling or my business, as if my head, and my heart, and all my five senses were intended for nothing else than to live and die in my father's workshop, and now I perfectly see that I owe all I have become in the world, and outside the workshop, to the circumstance that I had to spend my youth so perpetually in it.

And these statements are easily understood if we consider that most of the trades, pastimes, and occupations of men are of such a nature that they cannot be properly followed unless they absorb a man entirely, both body and soul.

According to the theories on education of our time, on the other hand, it is the accessory which plays the chief part; people cannot invent enough means to let children enjoy their liberty as long as possible, *i.e.* leave them unaccustomed to the poor cart of life, to which, after all, they must be harnessed in the end.

*Games as Methods of Education* — Thus people rack their brains to invent games to attract children's attention to what they want to teach them.<sup>1</sup> Our fathers played when their work was done, and that is certainly better than playing before, or at the same time as work; they knew nothing of all the arts by which we attract children's attention; but they made them at an early age do all sorts of things, and thereby naturally made them without any arts attentive to what they taught them.

He who must do many things every day, and all sorts of things, and is made to do them well, will certainly

<sup>1</sup>The Philanthropinists are here especially alluded to. *Vide* Pinloche, *La Réforme de l'éducation en Allemagne au 18<sup>e</sup> siècle*, p. 227.

be educated in the power of concentrating his attention, and once one has learned to concentrate one's attention on what one is doing, one does so in learning too, and the desired result is attained.

But we turn the method the other way round, and want to fix our children's attention on strange and artificial objects, before their minds have been trained by father and mother, by the help of house-work and the attention it demands, and prepared for the more general artificial attention in study and school.

That is putting the cart before the horse because it looks interesting, and then trying to make this piece of folly less conspicuous by making the cart go by machinery.

Idlers are only pleased by tricks, and generally are free of their money to people who prance like fiery steeds; but we who are of a different sort must not be surprised if such teams do not go well, or for long.

For the educating of man to be a machine, or to cut capers, can never turn out well.

*The Family and not the School is the Centre of Education* — He who works early and late at his business and happy and serene enjoys the blessing of his industry, his virtue, and his uprightness by the side of a virtuous wife and fond children, cannot easily go essentially wrong in their education.

Thus Pestalozzi always comes back to this conclusion, that instead of founding training colleges for tutors and schoolmasters, we ought to facilitate and retain everything which makes men worthy, intelligent fathers, and prosperous citizens, *i.e.* what a prince



must aim at if he wishes to give a truly good education to the children of his kingdom. X

*Responsibility of Rulers.*—Thus the happiness of Europe does not depend on the progress of those branches of knowledge which we comprise under the name of philosophy, which however so rarely help the poor to their right, or to their bread; but it depends far more on princes again becoming fathers in their houses, and learning to consider the needs of their own concern. ||

When shall we give up this abuse of words?

It is of the greatest consequence in the world that the man who has something to do should consider his duty as his concern.

If the prince, the magistracy, and the innumerable army of their official servants, philosophical or otherwise, were to consider the peasant from as intelligent a point of view as a planter does his slaves, *i.e.* as merchandise, the bad quality of which would have a direct influence on his money-bags, the miserable lower classes would be very differently cared for to what they are now, and the education of citizens and of peasants would certainly become better than it is.

But our philosophers dream in heights, and our princes live in heights where they lose sight of the things of common life.

And the lower classes which obey such leaders body and soul are not accustomed to pay attention to the intrinsic value of the education of their children, as the merchant does to the intrinsic value of his merchandise. Thus the reason of the decadence of the lower classes is clear. b)

*Primary Education is founded on the Primary Needs of Mankind* — The first needs of man are corporal and sensual, and the satisfaction of these needs is what makes the first educating impression on the child, *i.e.* it is the first foundation of his education, and the first development of his powers and dispositions rests on it.

More dependent and helpless than any other creature on earth, the child at the mother's breast, and on his nurse's lap, feels its first impressions of morality in the vague feeling of love and gratitude which are almost always kept purest in the poor man by the feeling of his weakness and of his perpetual need.

The child's corporal needs, then, are the foundation of the development of his powers. They conduct him to the twofold foundation of all true human wisdom and virtue, *i.e.* to love and gratitude, the basis of all human morality.

The progress of the morality of man is in fact nothing else than the extension, the immediate development, the quickening, and the determining of the sentiments of gratitude and love which the baby already feels when satisfied, refreshed, and caressed. Pestalozzi is firmly of opinion that we should leave children on this simple path.

All the success of education depends on the fashion in which a child has learned to satisfy his external and bodily needs, and the educator ought not to be discouraged, if, for a long time, he has to confine his attention to the senses and bodily needs of the child.

Nature has enveloped man's higher faculties, as it were, with a shell; if you break this shell before it opens of itself, you uncover an unfinished pearl and

destroy the treasure of the life which you ought to have kept for your child.

The premature development of mind and heart destroys man's true forces.

When children round me cry for bread and waste their time, while I solve problems in algebra or dream of the needs of the state which are satisfied without my help, or if I expound to them my dreams on things eternal, I fail to perform the first duty which man owes his Maker, the citizen his country, and a father his child, for there is no doubt that this first duty is to become a good father and to care for wife and child.

*Disadvantages of General Rules in Education* — That is why the first and most essential rule of education is to consider most attentively the individual position of each child. All more general rules on education which consider not a definite, single individual, but the whole human race, easily lead astray.

Man is at all times incapable of seizing general, wide points of view, and, on the other hand, very clever in seizing a definite single object, and mastering it in all its details. It is easier to find hundreds capable of deducing correct principles of education from the observation of their own children than one who could render himself (by meditations on Nature and the general needs of man) fitted to educate one single child suitably to the needs of his position.

You are so-and-so, and you will have to be this and that, in such and such a manner, our fathers used to say, and kept firmly in view what they wanted, what they could do, and what ought to be, and their children generally prospered in this narrow path marked out for them.

But we say, a man may become all sorts of things, and a child must be prepared for anything that may happen. And we make to ourselves images of the humanity we have no knowledge of, and we pay no attention to the boy we call Hans, and the boy becomes a good-for-nothing fellow, because, lost in our dreams of humanity, we forget Hans, in whom the human being whom we wish to educate has grown up.

True rules of human education must not only be true in themselves, but also in respect of the persons from whom we must expect the application. And in this respect, the principle of grounding the first development of the human powers on work in the house is conspicuously true, because father and mother, who in general are, and ought to be, the only educators of humanity, are always conducted by hundreds of circumstances in their households to this principle.

*The Threefold Aim of Education: to fix the Attention, to form the Judgment, and to elevate the Sentiments* — To fix the child's attention, to sharpen and exercise his faculty of judgment, and to lift up his heart to noble sentiments is undoubtedly the essence of all the aims of education, and the exercising of children in housework is most certainly eminently adapted to further the attainment of this threefold aim.

Work is always of itself the surest means of fixing the attention, because it is not impossible to do work well without sustained attention, and the variety which the housework of which children are capable offers, develops their capacity of fixing their attention on several different things at the same time.

And just so man never exercises his faculty of judgment to more purpose than when he is early put to

many kinds of work ; for all kinds of work and every occupation whatsoever make such demands on the faculties that the lack of a correct judgment makes itself felt at every turn.

Finally, with regard to the elevation of the sentiments of the heart, and the paving of the way for all domestic and civic virtue, the practice of prompt, cheerful, childlike obedience to parents, relations, and other members of the household is so obviously most surely attained by early exercise in work in the house, and childlike participation in domestic concerns, that it is clear that no other means could take its place.

*Superiority of Home Influence to Books and Methods* — Books and artificial methods cannot in any respect be a substitute for home education ; the best story, the most touching picture, in a book is for the child, as it were, a vision in a dream, without connection, without harmony, or inner truth ; but all that happens before the child's eyes in the living room at home is naturally connected in his mind with hundreds of previous similar pictures of the same kind, consequently has inner truth for the child. That is why he can be so easily led by intercourse with members of his household and neighbours to a correct knowledge of men, and to an unhurried perception, while it is exceedingly difficult to attain this end by the help of books or of artificial methods of education. x

How many times it is unwearying patience in slowly turning a monotonous wheel, how often a fixed attention to a thousand little things, which insures peace in our homes, and how often are the dancing steps and the flight of genius to which we wish to raise our children the ruin of all domestic peace and

happiness. And yet we continue to dream, and daily neglect more and more to teach our children this careful attention to what they are doing, this inexhaustible patience under the inevitable, and this rigorous orderliness which make the happiness of life.

*Verbal Education and Practical Education*—Man is so little destined to spend his life in chattering, and needs so much bread, which he cannot find without work, that it is incomprehensible that we should drive him so forcibly to the one and so noticeably neglect the other.

It is by early accustoming a child to the work which will earn bread for his family that we make out of children men who fit into their hole wherever we put them; while children who only receive a verbal education, when grown up, are always square pegs in round holes.

*Disadvantages of General à priori Principles for the Knowledge of Truth*—Children whose knowledge has been forced, and who have been prematurely taught general principles based upon no actual experience, are like hens who hatch before they have laid their eggs.

He who works hard, and learns much by experience, and thereby hits on general rules and principles in the things with which he has most to do, proceeds more surely, has in the course of his life what he needs where and when he needs it. But the philosophy of the man whose head has been early filled with general rules and principles, results of experiences which are not his own, and of lives which resemble his in no particular, and then will nevertheless apply these principles, although he does not know the facts from

which they have been deduced, resembles the cheerful, childish chatter of town boys, who meet in their walks farmers driving a load of straw, and talk about their beautiful waggon of hay.

General rules, before man's mind has been trained to observation of single facts, to separation of kinds and species, to investigation of detail and to consideration of the different points of view from which every object may be regarded, always lead men away from the true sense of truth, and from all foundation of true philosophical knowledge.

First learn your trade, and then, when you know it, you can talk about it, our forefathers used to say. But we teach our children to prophesy before they can spell; to chatter before they can work; and to guess before they can measure.

Among the common people and the lower classes things still go on, thank goodness, in the old way. Among artisans and in all callings in which one only pays work, and not chatter and show, boys are still taught not to talk of a trade until they know it.

*Special or Professional Training*—Special education for a state of life or a profession is only a sowing of the land, which is to be ploughed and prepared for the seed by human education. *Idee der Elem.*, § 75. Where the land has not been ploughed, sowing of seed is in vain. Every special education which is not grounded on the foundation of human education misses its aim.

## CHAPTER III

### ON THE EDUCATION OF LOWER CLASSES

Causes of the ignorance of lower classes. — Pestalozzi's essential aim. — On the education of the poor.

*Causes of the Ignorance of the Lower Classes*—If the instruction of the lower classes has been neglected in Europe, that is due to psychological as well as historical causes. For while some arts and sciences rose to a very great height, all the foundations of natural education were lost. No part of the world ever rose to such a height, on the one hand, while, on the other, none ever fell so low. With some arts and sciences, its head, like the statue of the prophet, reached the clouds; but the instruction of the lower classes, which ought to have been the fundament, is, like the feet of this gigantic statue, the most miserable, fragile, and worthless clay. The invention of printing was the cause of this lack of proportion between the advantages of the upper classes and the misery of the lowest. That Europe should overrate the influence of the invention of printing on learning was in the beginning natural enough, also that it should have let this invention dazzle it and make it giddy; but it is incomprehensible that it should still be affected by that giddiness, and let it grow into

*Wie Gertrud  
ihre Kinder  
lehrt, IX,  
§ 34.*



a nervous fever which ruins body and mind. It is unheard of that the use of the five senses, and especially the sense of sight, the most general tool of *sense-perception*, should have been reduced to contemplate the idol of the new knowledge, letters, and books, so that the eyes, and even men themselves, are become mere instruments to read letters. The Reformation has, by the weakening of its peculiar spirit and by the worshipping of its dead forms and theories, which is the necessary consequence of that weakening, completed what the invention of printing began, in that, instead of resolutely attacking the public stupidity of a monastic and feudal world, it has even taught it abstract ideas which have fixed the world all the more firmly in the mere knowledge of words. X

Just as a devastating river, stopped in its course by some fallen rock, takes a new direction, and continues its ravages from year to year, from generation to generation, so the culture of the people of Europe, after having left, in consequence of the united action of these two great events, the smooth bed of *sense-perception*, and after having taken a general direction which is capricious and in no prepared channel, has continued from year to year and generation to generation its devastating action on men, until it has at last brought us, after centuries on this path, to the perfection of the general tonguey exercise of our knowledge, and through it to the tonguey exercise of unbelief, all of which is by no means calculated to conduct us to the calm wisdom of faith and love. In any case it is irrefutable that the all-devouring verbal book-learning of the culture of our time has resulted in making us discontented to remain what we are. X

*Pestalozzi's Essential Aim* — Pestalozzi's essential aim is to render the instruction of the lower classes possible in the family, the first instruction to be given by the mother.

People object that the mother will not give it.

Pestalozzi does not let himself be stopped by this, and declares he will pursue his way all the same.

For people disparage the lower classes, because they neither know nor respect them. Mere word-quibblers, mere bookworms, have always been, and always will be, the same. Pestalozzi will therefore say with Him who defended the cause of truth of the people and of love against the errors of the scribes, "Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do."

People sometimes say it suffices to cultivate the heart of the people, their feelings of affection and love, but that it is not necessary to cultivate the intellect at all. Pestalozzi indignantly refutes this monstrous assertion. If, on the one hand, he says, it is impossible to cultivate the intellect of the lower classes without cultivating their feelings, on the other, it is impossible to elevate their feelings without cultivating their intellect.

"I had, and have no intention of teaching the world any art or any science,—I know none,—but

I did, and do desire to facilitate in a general manner the acquisition of the elements of all arts and sciences to the lower classes, and to open to the faculties of the poor and weak the doors to art, which are the doors to humanity, and, if I can, burn down the barricade which, in spite of the empty boasts of our vaunted

*Wie Gertrud  
ihre Kinder  
lehrt*, VII,  
§ 38.

general enlightenment, puts the middle classes of Europe, with respect to individual power, far behind savages, in excluding ten men out of eleven from the right of every member of society to instruction, or at any right from the possibility of making use of that instruction."

"I have worked indefatigably for the last half century at the simplification of the processes of the instruction of the lower classes, especially at its most elementary stage, and at bringing them nearer to the course followed by Nature herself in the development of the human faculties. I have certainly handled much awkwardly, and have therefore brought down infinite suffering on myself; but I have borne it hitherto patiently without ever slackening in my earnest striving after my aim."

To those who declare that "the elevation of the people is a dream," Pestalozzi answers: "No, it is no dream! I will put the means to elevate the lower classes in the hand of the mother, in the hand of the child, and in the hand of innocence, and the wicked will be reduced to silence, and no longer utter the words, 'It is a dream.'"

Pestalozzi's education will not raise men out of their proper sphere, for it tends precisely to prevent the pupil taught by it from embarking on a literary or scientific career, if he is not destined to it by marked ability, and by the circumstances of his life.

But his choice once made, he will dip deep into his

*Schwanengesang,  
Vorrede.*

*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt, I,  
§§ 17, 18.*

*Idee der Elem.,  
§§ 239-241.*

subject and will subordinate all other branches of knowledge to this one he has chosen.

Thereby the professional and the working classes will both gain, and this will be a great advantage from a social point of view.

*On the Education of the Poor*—Just as every man ought to be educated for his station, just so the poor ought to be educated for poverty. In every state of life man's virtue should be exercised in the limits of the obstacles and difficulties which await him later on. The essential part of the preparation for every career consists then in training for the difficulties of that career in patience, and in the subduing of all the desires which might become later on an obstacle in the accomplishment of the chief duties. This truth is above all important in the education of the poor, *i.e.* in the preparation for the hardest of all the states of life. The poor must then be fitted to earn their livelihood, and must not be given desires above their station.

That is why Pestalozzi sees in the combination of industrial pursuits and education the most sure means of realising these conditions to the great advantage of the state.

In ordinary benevolent institutions for children, their capacities are not developed from this point of view, so that the state, far from profiting by them, maintains a nursery of uneducated persons, incapable of enduring the hardships of the life of their class, and having none of the technical abilities which would enable them to rise out of it, and consequently pass from the orphanage to the hospital.

ISELIN,

*Epheme-*

*riden, 1777.*

Pestalozzi thinks that poor children from six to eighteen years of age might earn enough to pay for their education, and even make profits by their work.

Pestalozzi does not, however, lose sight of the aim of education, which is, according to him, morality. "Man is capable of being guided to good in all circumstances and in all kinds of work."

Now children can be as easily educated to morality in an industrial establishment as elsewhere.

But one must strive to attain the aim. The heart is only guided by the heart.

The kind of work matters little, for no work is moral or immoral in itself.

## CHAPTER IV

### PRIVATE EDUCATION AND PUBLIC EDUCATION

Respective advantages of the two systems of education. —  
School. — Conditions which the school ought to fulfil.

*Respective Advantages of the Two Systems of Education*  
— Home bringing up offers in itself better and purer means for the application of the principles of elementary education than any school, public or private. Unfortunately the lowest classes are degenerated, presumption and weakness prevail in the middle classes, and in the higher ranks there is an almost absolute lack of power and truth in all the foundations of the pure home life, so that unsurmountable obstacles stand in the way of the application of the processes of elementary education.

*Idee der Elem., §§ 180-186.*

Just as the home life of some children has the greatest advantages, especially in preserving a natural and easy tone, on the other hand the common life of many children together has advantages, as regards the development of the power and truth of real life, which can seldom be attained in the narrow circle of home life. Cannot the two be combined? I know that it is difficult; but I feel, too, that this combination must be the aim of a good boarding-school. It is the aim of ours. I know that we are still far from having attained our aim; but also that we try to attain it,

and feel the possibility of its attainment, even in the midst of the greatest obstacles.

*School* — A boarding-school, conducted in a fatherly spirit and acting on a childlike spirit, is one of the best means of mitigating the degeneracy which takes place even in the real home life, and at the same time of creating anew the lacking domestic spirit among men.

From whatever point of view we look at it, he who feels himself, in spirit and in truth, the brother of hundreds, is a higher being than he who is only the most loving brother of one. If a boarding-school rises to the power of developing this feeling, its blessing is immeasurable.

That is the aim, difficult doubtless to attain, which Pestalozzi has striven after from his youth up.

Should one send the child to school? *Ibid.*,

Before answering this question, it is §§ 277-285. necessary to lay down the conditions which the school must fulfil.

*Conditions which the School must Fulfil* — The school must keep to the spirit which prevails at home, and add to the knowledge and power of the child what the circumstances of the home life could not give him. Does the school do that? Does it keep the child to the course of innocence, faith, and love, which he has begun at his mother's side? Does it firmly attach the power and knowledge which it can give the child to what his mother and his home life have already given him, to what he knows, what he has, what he can already do? Are the processes of the school education suitable to the child's condition, and

will they begin exactly at the point where the child has left off and take this point as its starting-point in all directions? Then, yes; even if the school only does half of all this, you must send him to it.

The school must become, from the moral point of view, the continuation of the moral life which the child has led under his mother's care, and must strengthen his religious sense which was the basis of it; from an intellectual point of view it must continue and expand the free, living observation of Nature and, in this respect, tend to transform the life in Nature into the life of Art. Its processes must in all respects be a continuation of those of the mother; similarly, from a physical point of view.

But if the school does nothing of all this, if its processes and its exercises are diametrically opposed to the natural education which the child has had at home, if it confuses what the other had ordered, if it brings to a standstill what the other had set in motion, if it sends to sleep what the other had awakened, if it kills what the other had quickened, it is not capable of giving the child what he needs.

But as often as not the mother is not capable of educating the child in conformity with Nature and consequently does not trouble herself as to whether the school is.

Until both school and mother form the highest conception of the spirit of education, it is impossible to make home education the foundation of a natural school education, or to educate while instructing, or to instruct while educating.

Elementary education alone can fill this great gap.



## BOOK II

### ELEMENTARY EDUCATION

#### CHAPTER I

##### CRITICISM OF THE EXISTING METHODS

Defects of the education of the time. — Error of rationalism. — Culture of the Greeks. — Elementary education and the Greeks. — Elementary education and the lower classes. — Elementary education and the hitherto existing methods. — The catechetical method. — The Socratic method. — Fatal consequences of the verbal instruction of schools. — Necessity of a thorough reform. — School and play.

*Defects of the Education of the Time* — The school education of our time does nothing but sew the ornaments of a superficial and useless knowledge of many things (*Vielwissen*) on the *Idee* coat of vanity of our empty being, not yet *der Elem.*, developed in its essential qualities, as a tailor's apprentice trims with motley fringes a coat which does not fit the man for whom it is made. §§ 72-82.

Barbarians are at least strong in one respect. We are not even that. We imagined we were in many respects, thinking that a higher culture would develop the forces of our nature in all directions. Now this higher culture has not done so; it was for the human race not a higher culture; it was in general

nothing but a means of weakening men. It was without moral and inward elevation, it was limited and restricted to a superficial and earthly sense, and the development of man, as a whole, was not even its aim; and his one-sided development must necessarily fail, because it found in the pure general development of the whole no binding connection and no educational basis. Both truth and love were as a rule wanting. The faculty of neither was developed.

The consequence was exactly the same as we see in Nature, when a field, in the necessary connected and consistent cultivation, finds no general foundation, which shall at the same time purify its forces, convey nourishment, and inspire life—conditions which are necessary if the corn on it is to come to maturity. The earth without all this brings forth nothing but weeds, which choke the good seed. Now truth and love, these fruits of the mind and of the heart, are choked in an insufficiently developed mind and heart, just as the good seed of the field is choked by weeds. For want of sufficient culture men run wild, just as plants do. Instead of truth, we have appearances; instead of love, selfishness; instead of ripened powers, presumptuous weakness; instead of the tranquillity which the consciousness of inner worth gives, the restlessness which the lack of this consciousness necessarily creates in the human soul—that is our portion.

*Error of Rationalism*—Lacking equally physical education and intellectual education, our generation has thrown itself headlong into the deadly sea of a hollow, superficial rationalism, and racing after the dreams of an easy and pleasant life, has fallen into the gulf of the actual world.

1807

The misfortune of the age is incalculable, that men let themselves be deceived by the semblance of an outward, superficial enlightenment, which had no deeper intellectual education and no higher education of the faculties as its foundation.

People wanted in the weakness of this great error to make men reasonable by knowledge, and they could neither give them this knowledge in a reasonable manner nor give them the reason necessary to acquire this knowledge. They were far from being able to develop in them this faculty of reason, which the correct recognition of real objects presumes, and which the latter serves to form in its turn. And nevertheless they maintained they had attained a very high level of human culture and were even on the road to the high culture of the Greeks.

*Culture of the Greeks*—But the Greeks founded their education on the development of the human faculties by free and independent human life, and not on the extension of their knowledge. Their gymnasias were not a sort of philological training college for teachers, any more than their humanistic culture was founded on the study of foreign languages, ancient or modern, nor on Oriental or Egyptian literature, although their culture was as little primitive as ours. This monstrous error of seeking life in death, instead of trying to reanimate death by life, was reserved for our time.

Among the Greeks the special education for calling or profession took as its point of starting their general education; their special education did not precede their general education. In its turn their general education was the work of their civic institutions, of

their national strength, of their legislation, of their customs. And no one wanted less than they did to popularise science. That was reserved for us and our time, to bring up children on science by way of giving them the appearance of strength, while leaving them in their state of childhood. The Greeks did not do that and did not want to do so. They made men out of their children by education. Then the strongest of these men, naturally of their own accord, strove to raise themselves to the higher standard which their scientific culture showed them. Toward this end I believe we ought anew to strive, and decidedly, as much as lies in our power, by the very same means which the Greeks used to attain it.

*Elementary Education and the Greeks* — Are we approaching this condition by elementary education? Pestalozzi thinks so. Just as we recognise in the divine element of Christianity the most perfect means of elevating the morality of our race, so we find, from the intellectual point of view, in the model which Greece offers us, the most perfect which has ever been given to humanity. And we believe that it lies in the spirit of elementary education to lead our race, through the necessary consequences of truth, in the development of our forces to the very same results, as those to which the culture of the Greeks had conducted a great proportion of that nation. The Greeks had for their education gymnasia, *i.e.* actual places where they could devote themselves to physical and intellectual exercises. Our time has instead schools, *i.e.* places where the pupils are morally weakened and taught tricks, for the greater part of our schools are nothing else. Now we believe that the

method of elementary education is calculated to reëstablish these gymnasia and also to transform elementary schools, following a conception higher even than that of the Greeks, into places of physical and intellectual exercise which will fit them for the battle for truth and love, and thereby work successfully against the manifold erroneous opinions which have found room in the education of the people.

*Elementary Education and the Lower Classes*—We give ourselves at the present time all imaginable pains to teach the lower classes reading, writing, *Idee der* and arithmetic, without troubling ourselves *Elem.*, as to whether they can also speak and think. §§ 112-119.

Everything, even what is best in our efforts for the lower classes, suffers under the weakness of our schools.

*Elementary Education and the hitherto Existing Methods*—However, Pestalozzi has incorporated in his elementary education everything good which ever existed in methods of education. For the simple and straightforward educational method of our forefathers was much nearer to the principles of elementary education than the artificially refined education of our epoch of weakness and corruption. Then no one maintained, as they do nowadays, that the lower classes have no need of a good education, one satisfying the claims of our nature in its whole extent, nor of a school which shall vigorously strive to improve it. No honoured man in the land uttered the sentence, We do not owe the lower classes a good education, because they will not know how to make use of it; we may not give them such, because they are obliged to earn their bread by the sweat of their face.

People thought at that time that those sublime words, "In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread," were addressed to all men. We must then return to the opinion of our forefathers.

Some men dare to say that we ought only to busy ourselves in cultivating the heart of the people; it is not necessary to do anything for their mind. They themselves can do that better than any one else. Remarkable objection! It is impossible to cultivate humanly the minds of the people without elevating their hearts; and, conversely, it is impossible to elevate their hearts without also cultivating their minds.

We must remark on some of the contradictions of the adversaries of everything new, which are decidedly new. When Lavater offered sustenance to the heart of the people, and fostered their belief in the literalness of the Holy Scriptures, these people cried out at the top of their voices, "The heart is not everything, faith is not everything; the people need intelligence and intellectual culture as well for their life." And now that elementary education addresses itself to the mind as well, they cry again, "Away with it! the heart is all that matters for the people!" Of a truth, they are like those men of whom it is written, "We have piped unto you, and ye have not danced; we have mourned unto you, and ye have not lamented."

*The Catechetical Method*—The catechetical method is far from being a real exercise of the reasoning faculties. It is a mere verbal analysis of complicated sentences, and has so far value as preparatory exercise in the gradual elucidation of conceptions as it lays the sepa-

*Wie Gertrud  
ihre Kinder  
lehrt, II,  
§§ 8-13.*

rated words and sentences singly before the child's eyes, disentangled for its more thorough perception. But in spite of this value, the catechetical method applied to these abstract notions is nothing but a repeating, in parrot fashion, of words which the children have not understood.

*The Socratic Method* — As to the Socratic method, it is impossible with children who lack at the same time the background of previously acquired knowledge and the outward instrument of the knowledge of language.

Thus Pestalozzi rejects the Socratic method, because he thinks we should not make the judgment of children, on any subject whatsoever, appear more ripe than it is in reality; but we should rather keep it back as long as possible, until they have considered every object which they are to discuss, from all points of view, and under many conditions, and until they are absolutely familiarised with the words which designate its nature and qualities.

*Fatal Consequences of the Verbal Instruction of Schools — Necessity of a Thorough Reform* — The superficialness of the routine exercises which *Schwanen-* children are put through generally incites *gesang*, § 88. to thoughtless chatter on subjects which should serve to instruct us. When the child does not understand what he is to learn, and nevertheless has to pretend that he understands it, thoughtless chatter on what he does not understand follows as a matter of course. His learning itself resolves itself into learning to chatter on what he does not understand. It is psychologically correct that, and very easy to explain how, on

this road one can come to speak fluently about things, at which one has had to work so hard and so long, that one is utterly sick of them, without having come to a clear insight of what they are and what good they are.

Our monastic instruction, by its neglect of all psychology, has not only removed us in all subjects from *Schwanengesang*, § 91. the supreme end of education, which is clearness of ideas, but has even undoubtedly resulted in depriving us of the means which Nature herself, independent of all art, offers us to help us in the rendering distinct of our conceptions, and also in making impossible for us the use of these means, by the ruining of our inner selves.

Most of our public schools not only give us nothing, but actually extinguish that in us which man possesses in himself without schools, and what every savage possesses to a degree of which we have no conception.

A man who has been educated by the monastic method to become a wordy fool, is as a matter of fact more inaccessible to truth than a savage, and more incapable than any one of profiting by the guidance of Nature, and by what she does to render our ideas clear and precise.

“Our school education seemed to me like a great house, the upper story of which was dazzling in its high and perfect art, but is only inhabited by a few. The middle story is inhabited by more, but they have no staircases by which they can go up to the upper story in human fashion, and if any of them were in their need to show

*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, IV, § 3.



a desire of climbing up to this upper story in animal fashion, if they are seen, they get their fingers pretty generally knocked, and here and there even an arm or a leg which they used in this climbing up broken; in the third, the lowest, lives finally a countless herd of men, who have exactly the same right to sunshine and fresh air as the ones above; but they are not only left to themselves in the horrid darkness of windowless holes, but they are even rendered incapable, by bandages and blinders, of raising their eyes up to the highest story."

It is then of prime necessity that the educational cart of all Europe be not only better drawn, *Ibid.*, it must rather be turned round and started X, § 18. on a new road.

Our one-sided, superficial, thoughtless use of the tongue must first be killed and buried before it will again be possible to produce truth in our race by instruction and language.

And we must not content ourselves with half-measures, we must lay aside in this instruction all lesson books which in a single one of their lines assume that the child can talk before he has learned how.

*School and Play*<sup>1</sup> — The spirit of ordinary pedagogy shows itself everywhere contrary to morality, even when actually appealing to morality, and most conspicuously in the opposition which *Idee der Elem.*, it sets up between instruction and education §§ 67-71. and the inner and outward life of the child. It even sets up this opposition as a principle, viz., that a spirit must prevail in school hours quite different to that which prevails in free time and play hours. And at

the same time there is a most pronounced tendency to turn school into play and play into school.

The opinion, that the spirit which prevails in lesson time should be quite different to that which prevails in playtime, would however be quite right, if we consider the matter without losing sight of the higher view of the unity of our nature.

From this point of view, the child must be educated by freedom to necessity, by necessity to freedom. If a spirit prevails in lesson hours other than that which prevails in play hours, it is because the spirit of obedience and necessity prevails in school hours, and the spirit of freedom and independence in play hours.

Necessity, strict order, unvarying obedience to rules, should prevail in lesson hours. The spirit of the teacher and his treatment of the children should nevertheless however be purely human, *i.e.* a living and free spirit during school hours as at all other times. He ought only to make the subject taught stand out in its strict limitations and exclusiveness, so that the child may clearly see the thing itself and no shadows, and may not give himself up to play. The recreation hour should free him from this restraint. In it the single isolated object should be relegated to the background, the child should move freely, his life should be reflected in the life of all, and no fixed form, no restraint, hem the flow of his inner self.

That is the true meaning of the difference necessary between the needs of school hours and those of play-times. But thousands who lay down this principle do not take the unity of nature as their starting-point, but consider these unequal needs of the position and circumstances of the child as needs of his unequal

nature. They separate instruction from education, and even demand a spirit in the instruction of language different to that in the teaching of mathematics, to that which prevails in the teaching of natural history, to that in the teaching of singing. But the spirit of education must always, at every instant, be the same; and as the spirit of instruction must always be the same as the spirit of education, so the spirit of instruction must be the same in every subject taught. This applies equally to play hours and to school hours. If you give the child the food necessary for the fullness of his life as a whole in school hours and in playtime, your child will be as animated in your school hour as in your playtime. There is truly no need for laws and principles for the one different to those for the other.

The child of the good mother lives every hour of the day in the same spirit; he lives his full contented life in his lesson time as in his playtime. And educator! human educator! is he to live only half his life in your lesson time? Reject this erroneous theory, educator! It tends to kill the child whom you ought to make alive; and you can make him alive, you can at every moment of your instruction. You can, you ought to give his heart and his mind at every moment of the lesson hour a truer, higher life than he lives during his play hour. If you can, if you do so, he is delighted to feel conscious, during school, of a power higher and nobler than that which he is conscious of during play. But, to be sure, it is true that if you are not capable of taking complete possession of the whole being of the child by your teaching in his lesson time, and of animating him to a higher life than he leads in

his playtime, then it is certainly natural enough that a spirit will animate the child in your lesson time very different to that which animates him in playtime. On this path you will certainly never attain to making the same spirit prevail among the children in school as in play. You must give this soul, hungering after development, the food and nourishment which his own nature craves, and not that which your whims and your erroneous ideas suggest. If you do not, do not be surprised if you do not attain your aim.

If you see a senseless man loading his starving beast of burden instead of feeding it, you are not surprised to see it evince a very different spirit to what it does when, freed from its load, it finds its favourite food on the open heath.

But out of ten schoolmasters who fall into this error, there are nine, perhaps, who are as heavily and as unnaturally laden with their school as their school children are with them. We bestow our compassion on them from our hearts, and pity them for living, as we do, at an epoch when men consider the needs of human nature as little for their schoolmasters as they do for their school children.

## CHAPTER II

### NATURE, AIM, AND DIVISION OF ELEMENTARY EDUCATION

First education of the child by its mother. — Aim and definition of elementary education. — Division of elementary education. — Moral and religious education. — Intellectual education. — Point of starting of intellectual education. — Study of languages. — Foreign languages. — The formation of judgment. — Language, number, form. — Artistic education. — The moral element of artistic education. — The intellectual element of artistic education. — The physical element of artistic education. — First æsthetic education. — Technical and artistic education. — Physical education. — General human character of elementary education. — Impossibility of the application of elementary education. — Educating influence of life.

*First Education of the Child by its Mother* — From the moment when the mother takes the child on her lap, she instructs him by the fact that she brings nearer to his senses the objects which Nature presents to him scattered, at great distances apart, and indistinct, and thus makes easy, pleasant, and attractive the operation of perception and the cognition which is dependent on it.

In her ignorance and her innocence, the mother does not even know what she is doing. She has no intention of instructing her child, she only wants to soothe

*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt, X, §§ 1-4.*

him, to engage his attention; and yet she follows the sublime course of Nature in its purest simplicity, without any idea of what Nature is doing through her; and yet Nature does a great deal through her: she opens the world in this manner to the child, she prepares him thus for the use of his senses, and for the early development of his faculties of attention and perception.

It is our business, then, to continue artificially what the mother has begun instinctively. "But in this respect we are not as far advanced as the woman of Appenzell, who hangs over her child's cradle, in the first weeks of its life, a big kite made of many-coloured paper, thus indicating exactly the point at which art should begin to bring the child to a clear and distinct consciousness of the objects of Nature. . . . This Appenzell kite is to me what the bull was to the Egyptian, — a sacred thing, — and I have done all I could to begin my instruction at the point of departure chosen by the woman of Appenzell."

We shall, however, see that Pestalozzi never leaves to chance, either at the beginning or later on, the objects which are to be presented to the child's senses, but does everything to make it possible to pass over the accidental and bring the essential in all perceptive cognition before the child's senses even at this early age and to make the consciousness of this impression indelible.

We shall see that this is the aim of elementary education.

The mother does not recognise any freedom of will in the child. As she devotes herself to him in her

— service & perfect justice

love, and satisfies his needs, she exacts from him obedience. But just as she raises him to truth by the love with which she devotes herself to him, so she raises him to freedom by the obedience which she exacts from him. She teaches him to walk, so that he may no longer need her guidance; she makes him capable, so that he may be able to help himself; to know, so that he may himself know what he needs. She is pleased when he can do more than she can, when he knows more than she does, when he becomes greater than she is. The obedience which she exacts is that which his own nature and his needs demand. Her will is no other than law, which his own reason would impose on the child, if he were a man, *i.e.* free, and to which he would submit of his own accord. She believes in the reasonableness which will later on unfold itself in him, as she believes in her own. At the moment when she is exacting obedience from him, yes, by the very fact that she does so, and by the manner she does so, she expects it from him as something existing as a matter of course. She punishes her child, she calls him to account, and thereby all unconsciously declares him to be a free and reasonable being. His weakness is her strength, his needs are her love, and her inspiring hope is what he will one day be. She gives the child for his practice in moral feeling, speech, and action, by which she raises him to independence, a living model in her own moral feeling, speech, and action. Her presence, the whole impression of her being, creates in the child moral consciousness, the germs and the elements of the idea of good.

*Idee  
der Elem.,  
§§ 52-54.*

In the same way the idea of his mother creates conscientiousness in the child. The image of his mother, which accompanies him everywhere, becomes in itself his conscience. She is likewise the first Providence he knows. As she judges him, so he learns to judge himself. As she by judging him teaches him to judge himself, so she shows him in God, when her presence is no longer sufficient and her judgment too weak, the most high, an omnipresent and omniscient, a holy and just judge. She sanctions the precepts and laws which she imposes on him, as representative of Nature and of the child's conscience, as divine commandments, and expands in this way, as the judgment, the faculties, and the needs of the child expand, his moral disposition to a complete moral conception of life and the world. But this conception, while it itself expresses, on the one hand, the unvarying and eternal nature of morality itself, connects itself at all points to the individuality of the child, his sentiments and relations to his brothers and sisters, his relatives, his fellows, etc. It is, then, in conformity with the progress of the child's development in all directions, and is in its essence nothing else but the extension of the activity and of the sphere of his pristine moral nature.

*Aim of Elementary Education* — Elementary education, then, ought to continue under the master, the mother's work, in the spirit of the mother, and in the spirit of Christianity. It should in no way put itself in opposition with the child's former relations of feeling and disposition, but should bring its whole activity into living connection with them.



*Definition of Elementary Education* — Elementary education is nothing else but conformity to nature in the development and perfecting of the dispositions and faculties of men. *Schwanengesang*, §§ 1-10.

But what is human nature?

Clearly the complex of dispositions and powers by which man distinguishes himself from animals.

Whence naturally follows that elementary education is that development and perfecting of the powers and dispositions of the human heart, the human mind, and the human skill which is in accordance with nature. Whence again follows the necessity of subordinating the claims of our animal nature to the higher claims of our inner divine nature.

Man has a desire to do everything for which he feels that he has an inherent power, and that this desire of his is involuntary is a consequence of his indwelling instinct.

The sense of this power is the expression of the eternal, inextinguishable, and immutable laws which form the basis of the course of nature.

These laws proceed, just as do the powers in which they dwell, from the unity of human nature.

That alone which takes possession of man as a whole (heart and mind and hand) is educative in the true sense of the word and in accordance with nature; everything which does not take possession of him as a whole does not take possession of him in accordance with nature, and is not, in the true sense of the word, humanly educative.

Every one-sided development of one of our powers is no true education, no education in accordance with nature; it is only the outward semblance of education,

the resounding brass and the jangling bells of human education, and not education itself. The unity of the human faculties was given by God. What, therefore, God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.

The laws which are the groundwork of the natural development of every one of our faculties are essentially different, but every one of these single faculties is essentially only naturally developed by the simple means of its use.

Man develops love and faith, which are the foundation of his moral life, naturally only by active love and faith.

The same holds good of thought, the foundation of his intellectual life, of his senses, organs, and limbs, the outward foundations of the faculties appertaining to his skill and calling.

Man has besides an instinctive tendency to use these faculties. But one can augment or diminish this tendency. ✓

Elementary education then, more precisely defined, is the result of the efforts of the human race to render such assistance to the course of nature in the development and perfection of our faculties as the enlightened love, the educated reason, and the enlightened artistic sense of our race may be capable of.

Left to itself, the course of nature is only quickened by animal instincts. It is the business of our race, it is the aim of elementary education, it is the aim of piety and wisdom to animate it humanly and divinely.

*Division of Elementary Education* — Elementary  
*Idee der* education divides itself naturally into  
*Elem.*, § 21. moral education, intellectual education,

and physical education, which are based respectively on the will, the knowledge, and the physical capacity of the child, and in their turn form the basis of these.

*Moral and Religious Education* — Moral elementary education is nothing else than the pure development of the human will, by the higher sentiments of *Ibid.*, love, gratitude, and faith, in the perfection § 23. in which they are expressed in their first blossoming in the pure relations between mother and child.

The aim of this education is the moral perfection of our nature; its means are exercises in striving after perfection in moral thought, sentiment, and action. Applied to the visible, it reveals itself as morality in action (physical); to the invisible, as religion in sentiment or vision (sentimentally hyper-physical).

As we can only conceive the perfection of morality in a higher being, only in God, the first moral aspiration connects itself with the belief in God, which so simply and so naturally results from the truth of the child's love, gratitude, and faith. X

*The Idea of God* — The child loves and believes before he thinks and acts. *Schwanengesang*, § 42

How are love and faith, the foundation of our moral life, developed in the child? — By the constant gratification of his physical needs by the mother, *Ibid.*, to which gratification father and brothers §§ 15-18. and sisters also contribute.

But the solicitude of the mother to gratify the child's needs must not be carried to excess. The enlightened mother lives for her child in the service of her love, but not in the service of his whims and the selfishness

which is excited and quickened in him by his animal nature.

The naturalness of the care with which she conduces to the child's repose is not calculated to excite his senses, but only to satisfy his sensual needs.

By this means the first sentiments of love and faith are naturally awakened in the infant by its mother, and the sentiments of love of and faith in father, brother, and sister naturally follow, from which finally results love of and faith in God.

*Intellectual Education* — Intellectual education again is nothing else but the pure development of the faculty of knowledge, *i.e.* of our faculty of reason, by the highly simple process of making a habit of its use. And as this faculty in its essence first connects itself with the perceptive impressions which the objects of the external world make on our senses, secondly rests on the acquired faculty of combining, separating, and comparing, as the elements of all human knowledge, these original impressions, or rather the simple results of their action on our mind, so intellectual elementary education demands: —

1. Psychological direction of the action of nature in order to excite and collect the impressions which reason, *i.e.* the living intellectual power in the child, necessarily creates by the contemplation and by its existence in the midst of the life of nature.

2. Psychological utilisation of these impressions as the essential and unvarying means given by Nature herself, by which the whole power of the mind, or the faculty of reason, can be most easily developed in us.

*Point of Starting of Intellectual Education* — The point of starting of intellectual education is the impression produced on us by the perception of all the objects, inward or outward, which in coming in contact with our senses quicken and excite the instinct, essentially inherent in our minds, to develop itself. *Schwanengesang*, §§ 19-26.

This perception, quickened by the instinct of the faculty of thought, leads to the consciousness of the impression which the objects perceived have made on us, and thereby to the sense recognition of the same. It consequently necessarily creates the sensation of the need of expressing these impressions, at first by signs, and afterward by speech.

Now man can speak naturally of nothing which he has not recognised, nor otherwise than he has recognised it. What he has wrongly recognised, he will discuss wrongly.

*Study of Languages* — That is why the study of the mother-tongue, like that of every other, is intimately connected with the knowledge acquired by perception. X

Here again the natural progress of education ought to be in accordance with that of nature, which demands that the impressions of our perceptions be transformed into knowledge.

The child's desire for and capacity of speech develop only in proportion to the knowledge which he gradually acquires by perception. It is the necessarily slow progress of nature. But the pleasure he feels at hearing his mother speak gives him the desire of imitating her. Thus she accelerates the child's progress, and the aim of elementary education

is precisely the search after the means of this acceleration, and the indication of them to mothers.

*Foreign Languages* — The natural acquisition of any foreign language by no means progresses thus slowly, for the conditions given are quite different.

In the first place, the child has already learned to use his organs of speech, and in every foreign tongue has only to practise a few new sounds. In the second place, he has already acquired by sense-perception millions of notions, which he can express in his mother-tongue with the greatest precision, so that the acquisition of a new language consists essentially in the learning how to transform sounds, the signification of which in his mother-tongue he knows, into sounds which he does not yet know.<sup>1</sup>

The art of facilitating this transformation is then one of the most essential tasks of elementary education.

*The Formation of the Judgment* — Another point of the greatest importance is the formation of the judgment.

As the faculty of logically handling objects which have been clearly perceived by the senses, obviously finds its most natural incitement and quickening in the acquired power of counting and measuring, it is

<sup>1</sup> This confession, tardy but sincere, of the direct method in teaching modern languages deserves to be noted. It is to be explained perhaps by the failure of Pestalozzi's language teaching. "The teaching of languages is absolutely bad" (*Der Sprachunterricht ist durchgängig schlecht*), writes Ksionzek, one of the teachers sent by the Prussian government to study the new pedagogy at Yverdon in 1810. (Letter dated February 3, 1810, Bruno Gebhardt, *Die Einführung der Pestalozzischen Methode in Preussen*. Berlin, 1896, p. 47.)

clear that the simplified treatment of arithmetic and geometry will furnish the best means toward this important aim of education.

*Language, Number, Form* — The means by which the action of reason manifests itself to us *Idee der* in nature are language, number, and form. *Elem.*, § 24. Applied to the power of producing and understanding the truths and relations which they contain; they constitute the education of the reason; applied to the power of producing and feeling their inherent beauty, harmony, and perfection, they constitute the æsthetic education.

*Artistic Education* — We must also examine elementary education from the point of view *Ibid.*, §§ of its influence on the artistic education of 121-133. man. This education, too, must, if it is to be truly elementary, start from the recognition of the unity of our nature. If art is to be human, *i.e.* if it is really to lead man to the consciousness of the dignity of his nature and to the accomplishments of an existence and a life corresponding to it, it must necessarily start from the elevation of mind and heart, as its essential foundation, and then express itself outwardly by the education of our senses and our physical powers.

*The Moral Element of Artistic Education* — The moral element of artistic education is the moral nature of our race, which through the might of its purely divine essence, subordinates to itself the physical education of our race, just as it subordinates to itself the intellectual education and permits neither the one nor the other to have a separate existence independent of it.

*The Intellectual Element of Artistic Education* — In the same way the intellectual element of artistic education is the intellectual nature of man.

Its especial external means is given to the child in the alphabet of sense-perception, in geometry, combined with the development of the faculty of thought, in the elementary exercises in language and number.

With the help of these combined means the artistic faculty of the child develops intellectually. It makes figures out of combinations of lines, and does this in such a way that he exhausts the limits of the possible in their combination. His sense of relation thus awakened forms a skeleton correctly, before he thinks of giving it flesh, colour, shape, and beauty. He becomes a creator of the beautiful, not by the contemplation and the copying of the single beautiful forms which he sees, but by the inner, general consciousness which he has of the pleasing, the decorous, the beautiful. And this consciousness is developed in him by exercises in the correct and the proportional, and elevates his mind imperceptibly to the sentiment of the simply sublime in externals, and thereby again has brought his mind into harmony with his inner self and made him capable of representing this harmony externally in art.

*The Physical Element of Artistic Education* — The physical elements of art are primarily the senses themselves. Considered from this point of view, its means are mere exercises of the senses, especially of the eye and the ear. Secondly, the mechanical aptitudes of our hand and our mouth, in order to express the inwardly developed intuition of our art, also outwardly to the eye and to the ear. These aptitudes demand



a double elementary gymnastic exercise of the hand and finger, the mouth and the throat. The first embrace all works of art, drawing, or modelling; the second confine themselves to the art of singing.

*First Æsthetic Education*—It is Nature herself who awakens our inner sense of order and beauty, — the fundamental basis of art.

Nature is beautiful. The child likes to look at it, the mother likes to draw his attention to it. His whole moral, intellectual, and physical existence quickens his natural observation of everything that is beautiful. In this respect, one has only to connect oneself with the action and the appearances of Nature itself. Heaven and earth unfold themselves in all their glory before the eyes of the child; and the more the child is quickened and trained by his moral and intellectual education, the greater is his inner receptivity for all that is beautiful. The child of the pious mother stands adoring before the beauty of creation, the germ of the development of the sense of beauty in him is quickened by the holy awe of the sublime, of the most high. The outward mechanical education to art is then proportionate to the intellectual. The mechanical foundation of all beauty, the outline of the skeleton of all that is beautiful, takes as its point of starting the consciousness of the relation of all forms to one another. It demands an educated faculty of seizing correctly the proportions of every object, equally by the ear as by the eye, and expressing the same correctly by hand or mouth.

It is then by elementary exercise in arithmetic, geometry, and perspective, combined with the sublime moral means of quickening the artistic sense, that the

pupil of the method proceeds, now that he is prepared and rendered capable, to the exercise of the mechanical arts, which are essential to the outward presentation. The point of starting must necessarily be looked for in a natural development of the child's innate power and attained by the process of making of a habit of this power.

What has been said of the artistic productions of eye and hand applies equally to what appertains to ear and throat.

In most intimate connection with the intellectual exercises of artistic education, and necessarily dependent on the educated power of the eye and the hand, the mechanical means of artistic education are necessarily subject to the general laws of all elementary education. They all proceed from the physical exercises which teach the child to know the most important motions that his limbs are capable of making, and to practise the most suitable of these. But this gymnastic exercise is only elementary so far as it is general, and ceases to be so as soon as it becomes the means of exercise in any special art. This point of view is important, because the special elements of art almost entirely coincide with the general elements. Therefore it is all the more necessary to keep both separately in view, and not to weaken the pure perfect practice of the one by the one-sided limitation of the other.

The absence of such elementary gymnastic exercise in art explains the disappearance of the artistic sense and the artistic faculty in the people and consequently of the inventive faculty. That is why the people stops at mere imitation. ✓

*Technical and Artistic Education*—Technical and artistic education, of which the training for one's future calling is only a part, has at the same time a physical and an intellectual basis, and calls both orders of faculty into play at the same time.

*Physical Education*—Finally elementary physical education, in conformity with the inner unity of our nature, is nothing else than a psychological development of power, or of the child's inherent physical faculties, which similarly again is attained by nothing else than their habitual use.

The point of starting of the development of these faculties is simply exercise. Exercise directed to the attaining of independent ease and security in the use of the limbs, and to the overcoming of physical obstacles, produces strength; directed to attaining regular and harmonious expression, produces grace.

*General Human Character of Elementary Education*—Elementary education, while following separately each one of these directions, nevertheless always takes possession, as the mother does, of the whole being of the child. While it is occupied in developing heart, mind, or body, it exercises and calls into action all the sentiments of the heart, all the faculties of the mind and the parts of the body.

*Impossibility of the Application of Elementary Education*—Is not elementary education a dream? where does it actually exist?

It exists everywhere and nowhere, everywhere in single proofs of the possibility of its realisa-

*Schwanen-  
gesang,  
§§ 36-39.*

tion, nowhere in its completion. The imperfection of our being renders impossible perfection in elementary education, for the knowledge and power of our race is patchwork in all its parts, and what is highest and best in our culture only develops in patchwork form. It is then only an ideal after which we must strive. No institute, however royally endowed, could apply practically the idea of elementary education as a perfect method of education and instruction, applicable to all sorts and conditions of men.

Why ?

Because human nature opposes the perfected general introduction of this high idea with irresistible strength. All our knowledge and all our capacity is patchwork and will remain so to the end of our days.

Consequently, a method which shall satisfy the idea of elementary education in its perfection is inconceivable.

Illuminate its principles ever so clearly, simplify its means to the utmost, no outward equality of the means of execution is conceivable; every individual will put these means into execution in a manner in accordance with the idiosyncrasies of his own individuality, *i.e.* otherwise than others would.

But if we consider the aim of elementary education as the very aim of all human culture, then it is no longer a dream, for it is the aim of the humanity to which we belong, and therefore it is our duty to strive after it, therefore it cannot be eternally impossible of realisation and attainment, and may not be considered in this light. And if it is certain that the idea of elementary education, in the forms of its application as method, will never attain perfection in its realisation,

it is not less certain that the striving after this aim exists in human nature, and that to this striving we owe the degree of culture that humanity has attained.

It is nowhere in its perfection, but it is to be seen everywhere in the patchwork of its single presentations.

*Educating Influence of Life—Life educates.* Life in the midst of great surroundings educates by force, life in domestic surroundings educates by love.

*Idee  
der Elem.,  
§ 214.*

*Life educates is the fundamental principle of all education that is in conformity with Nature.*

*Schwanen-  
gesang,  
§ 41.*

*How does life educate?* To answer this question, we must examine the subject from two points of view:—

*Ibid., §§  
43, 44.*

1. *In what way does the influence of life tend to develop naturally the powers of human nature?*

In all circumstances, according to fixed, eternal laws, which are the same for all men, in all ranks of the social scale.

2. *How far does its influence tend to educate naturally the power of application of the developed faculties of the child?*

Here again life acts on every individual which it educates in complete harmony with the different circumstances in which the individual is placed, and also in harmony with the peculiar faculties which he possesses. Its final influence in this respect is therefore inexpressibly variable.

It follows, then, that the art of elementary education

consists solely in presenting objects for sense-perception in domestic life to the child, from the cradle, in attractive, powerful, and pleasant form, so that they may have an influence on him which is, in the truest sense of the word, educating.

## CHAPTER III

### THE ELEMENTARY METHOD

There is only one method of education. — Definition and statement of the elementary method. — Nature of the elementary method. — Aim and originality of the method. — The method is positive from the point of view of the individual. — The method does not destroy individuality. — The method is positive from the point of view of the instruction. — The method ought to be universal. — Relations of the method to realism, formalism, philanthropinism, and humanism. — The method imitates Nature. — The method imitates the mother.

*There is only One Method of Education* — There cannot be two good methods, there is only one, and this is based on the eternal laws of Nature. *Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, X, § 22. But there is an infinite number of bad methods, and the inferiority of each increases in the measure that it departs from the laws of nature.

I know that the only good method is not in my hands, nor in that of any man, and that we can only approximately reach it. It is why I strive after it with all my might, and have with regard to the judgment on my work only this one rule, "By their fruits ye shall know them."

I do not deny that other methods may turn out good tailors, boot-makers, tradesmen, and soldiers, but I do deny that they can turn out a tailor or a trades-

man who will be, in the highest sense of the word, a man. Now the aim of all instruction is, and can be, nothing else than the humanly developed and quickened harmonious cultivation of the powers and dispositions of human nature.

Pestalozzi has embodied every good quality which he ever found in previous methods of education in his idea of elementary education. “The *Idee der Elem.*, § 115. simple and straightforward method of education of our forefathers was much more allied to the principles of elementary education than the artificial refinement of the education of our time of weakness and corruption.”

He regrets the abuse of the word *method*, which has been used much too soon to designate the isolated processes and forms of the intellectual elementary education. The only thing which may, nay must be truly so called, is the whole extent of the education according to Nature, and by no means the limited view of single objects and processes of instruction.

*Definition and Statement of the Elementary Method*  
— This method addresses itself essentially to human nature as a unity, as a whole, in the whole range of its faculties and dispositions. It considers morality and spirituality not merely as sisterly helpers of intellectual education, but acknowledges them to be the absolute and necessary foundation of it. It elevates our nature by noble sentiments before conducting it to the insight and knowledge of things, and extends the tender ties which unite the child and his parents, which express themselves in



gratitude, love, and confidence, during the childhood of its pupil, from the father and mother on earth to his Father in heaven; and believes the unity of human education, and the possibility of the harmonious union of the means of its moral, intellectual, and physical development only, to be attainable by the transference of his childlike feelings toward the mother to the faith in and adoration of God.

From the first word it teaches, in every faculty it calls into play, in every truth it communicates, it only gives facts and not ideas, and it founds every idea which the child forms, on the observation of facts.

One is wrong, then, to reproach the intellectual elementary education with tearing the pupil too early out of the dim religious light in which he sees truth as it were in a glass darkly, and out of his pious anticipatory faith. On the contrary, it carefully preserves this dim religious light, and raises the child just as Nature herself does, through a slowly dissolving twilight to the daylight of truth.

The method never goes against Nature, but is always in harmony with her.

A second reproach equally unjust, which has been levelled against the method, is that it does not connect its means of education closely enough with the truth of the circumstances of the individual and his domestic life, and of the actual existence of men. It is true that the forms of the intellectual education, as separate elementary means, seem in this separatedness one-sided and separated from connection of the whole existence of the child; but they are only so far as they are considered singly. They are not so in the

lesson, they are not so in the relation of the teacher to the child.

Of a truth, those who levelled this reproach at the method forgot that the idea of elementary education is a general idea, which must certainly in its presentation and application be divided into moral, intellectual, physical education, etc.; but these three divisions in human life never occur singly: on the contrary, they constantly interpenetrate in the unity of the human nature.

The child educated by the method is easily distinguished from other children. He looks at a thing long, steadily, penetratingly, piercingly, before he decides. He strives to attain the power of judging many things far less than to attain the power of judging correctly, and develops his power far more by well-ordered activity, by industry and work, than by idle grasping after an extension of his knowledge. By following this course, his judgment on all things ripens of itself, before he expresses it, even to himself. This judgment is therefore, too, as little voluntary in him as the essence of the method itself is voluntary in him; but it is an expression of nature, of the ripened truth and necessity in him. It is absolute, because it does not go farther than sense-perception itself. The calm, free, and simple natural impression of the objects is not then lessened by the method, but on the contrary is made more many-sided and more distinct. This invading, all-embracing thoroughness of the method leads the pupil necessarily, by reason of its essence, to satisfy the demands of his inner self in his condition, and to that inward security and tranquillity which preserves him from all exaggeration; also it leads

him to that reliability and accuracy with which the satisfied man always knows how to appreciate his condition and its advantages at their true value, and to make the most of them.

The elementary method, then, is diametrically opposed to the spirit of the education of the age, which has expressed itself in nothing more distinctly than in the general desire of change and drawing up of projects, and, in what is so essential and so inseparable from this spirit, the removing farther away from all purity of the inner human nature.

In every case, the idea of elementary education is independent of its application, and therefore also of every attempt at execution. And again, the intellectual guidance of the child is in no case elementarily right if it is not in harmony with the whole course of the child's inner and outer life. The child must live in his surroundings, believing, loving, and acting, and must acquire his physical and intellectual strength by active love if it is to be educated according to the *elementary method*. The greater, the truer, the more active the love that pervades the child's surroundings and his own heart, the more certain is the attainment of the human development of the child's physical and intellectual strength.

*Faith* and *love* are the basis of elementary education. The child of the method is no child of dreams, of faintness, of weakness; his truth is certainly small in extent, but is in its essence strong and of good foundation; it is born of his innocence and is a child of his strength. It is limited, but it loves its limits and is happy in them. I would say of it with the poet,

*Klein und arm ist meine Hütte,  
Doch ein Sitz der Fröhlichkeit.*<sup>1</sup>

The child of the method flees from and fears every unprepared and unfounded extension of his power. He goes in his education to the truth daily a sure gait, with measured and unwearying tread. He fears the opinions of the many-headed herd. Anything which does not simply and easily connect itself with what he already knows to be true, certain, and dear, does not remain in his mind; it goes past him like a vision, which has no place in his whole existence. His life in the truth is full of power, and if ever in this life its truth seems to him interwoven with an empty meaning, the vanity and emptiness of this meaning has by no means the same effect on him as it has on children whose education is, as a whole, vain and empty. Most certainly he will never become like the mere theorists who, without truth themselves, greedily snap, as hungry swallows snap at little midges in the air, at the baseless opinions of others! No! the children of the method will never become such mere theorists. Their beliefs all spring from a moral foundation and live in minds exercised in truth; they grow up in the life of pious, holy sentiments, and as they find, by the development of true, living, spiritual strength, an inner counterpoise to their destruction, so the actual sting of folly perishes in them. These theories can only appear to them in the emptiness of their actual being, and this becomes harmless by the preponderance of truth, love, and strength, with which it seems interwoven in

<sup>1</sup> My cottage is small and poor,  
But a happy home.

them. It recoils in every case from the delicacy of their pure, innocent feelings, and from the rock of immovable, impenetrable truth inherent in them.

This union of delicacy and strength is peculiar to the method in all its parts. In the whole extent of elementary education every step of its exercises is like all steps of holy nature, infinitely delicate and light, but at the same time, nevertheless, immovably firm, and sure of its results by reason of the full consciousness of its strength, to which the delicacy which sanctifies it is never wanting.

If we go to the pure source of elementary education, if we observe what the mother does, we find that her very hand, by the help of which the child learns to walk, although it is soft and acts without any pressure, is nevertheless a firm hand. But what would her soft gentleness become without her inner power, without her consciousness of her power, and without the certainty of her results, which is founded on this consciousness?

Here again we see that the spirit of the method always aims in its first weak steps, no less than in its last results, at maturity, at completion, at perfection. All the means of the method are calculated for this purpose; their result must therefore be the high, pure, perfect strength of human nature.

For here, too, the elementary method proves itself in harmony with Christianity, the chief precept of which is expressed in these words, "Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect."

*Nature of the Elementary Method*—As its name indicates, it ought to be, above all, elementary, and as

such have an organic and not a historic development. Pestalozzi means by that, that it ought not to follow the path in all its byways, windings, and wanderings which humanity, if we consider it only on its empirical course, has had to follow in order to arrive at truth and independence.

*Idee  
der Elem.,*  
§§ 8-21.

*Aim and Originality of the Method* — The elementary method aims at the discovery and retention of the essential elements, *i.e.* the unchangeable initial and progressive points of all instruction and all education. It aims at the discovery, and not the invention of the elements. It is not a question of new, hitherto non-existent, educational material, but of a right appreciation, apprehension, and elaboration of that which already existed at the creation of man. It aims at the retention, not at the determination, of the elements.

What pure instinct has done unconsciously, but with certain success, the educator is to do with insight and intuitive knowledge; what nature has produced of necessity, education is to take over with reason, and be as comprehensive in its treatment and as sure of success.

The elements of such a method are the points of starting of knowledge, capacity, and will. As the seed which is put into the ground produces stalk, blossom, and fruit, so they contain in germ everything human in the child.

His recognition of the truth, the sentiment of the beautiful and the power of good, and the method must perfectly develop these in the child. The method is then to take possession at the same time of the will of

the child, his instinct toward the true, his pleasure in the beautiful, and his zeal for the good so completely and actively that his recognition of the first, his sense of the second, and his power for the third may harmoniously develop, as far as the measure and limits of his nature may be capable of it.

The method then should go back not only to the primordial in human nature, but also to the primordial in every single subject of instruction; in all knowledge, capacity, and will, which the child is to acquire through education and instruction.

Human nature, in the whole extent of its faculties, powers, necessities, and conditions, is not only the initial point and the centre, but also the end point, the exclusive object of its task.

The elementary method is distinguished from other methods in that it is diametrically opposed to the general opinion that the child is not yet human, that his animal nature is first transformed by education to that of a human being.

Its aim is therefore absolutely this, to seize, quicken, and strengthen the human, spiritual, and moral qualities which exist in the child from the beginning. In other words, it considers and treats the child from the very first moment as possessing a human, spiritual, and moral nature. He is indeed, and of a truth, the image of God. The child is as little in Pestalozzi's eyes a *tabula rasa*, on which external impressions are engraved, or an empty vase intended to be filled. He is a real, living, spontaneous force, which, from the first moment of his existence, acts organically on its own development; which conceives, which receives, which shapes and moulds as it produces. Certainly

X

1 15nd 10015

Nature, the mother's devotion, the domestic surroundings, incite and impel, direct and guide, by their impressions the activity of this power; but they have no power over the nature of the activity. Nature gives it food and quickening influences by means of sense-perceptions and the sensations called forth by those impressions; but while the nature of the child receives them, it contains spontaneous in itself the foundation of its life and the laws of its activity. The sense-perceptions and the sensations produced by outer impressions belong to the inner strength of the child. Created by it, they are in their origin human, spiritual, and moral. Separated from the external objects in which man first perceived them, and thereby perceives himself and his soul, perceived and conceived, singly and independently, they become and they are the simple and unvarying elements of all purely human, purely spiritual, and purely moral culture of childhood and humanity.

*The Method is Positive from the Point of View of the Individual* — Through this conception of human nature Pestalozzi's method becomes then above all essentially positive, and that is a further peculiar characteristic of it. The humanity which it presupposes in the child is a bud ready to open, a quickened entity, a complex of striving or energetic dispositions and receptive faculties, which in indivisible unity radiate in all directions of his existence and imbibe life from all sides — qualities which reveal themselves as impulses and powers, capacities which reveal themselves as senses, all of which receive an individual existence by the fact that their activity and receptivity is limited and circumscribed in accordance with inner laws.



The method is to put into human activity the child's human instincts and call into action his human senses. But this calling into action is not restricting from without, but expanding from within. It does not aim at negative hindrance of what is bad, but at positive quickening of what is good. It acts against weakness by increasing the actually existing power against error, by the development of the inherent germ of truth; against sensuousness by the nourishing and strengthening of the mind. Perfectly conscious and always mindful of its aim, which is nothing else than to serve something higher than itself, viz., the divine nature in the child, and to help this divine nature to full development, not to subdue it, the method, personified in the educator, takes the form of a servant, and gives itself up, with joyful obedience, as to the will of God Himself, not to the child's whims nor to the child as individual, but to the life and law in him.

The true teacher of the method, feeling in all humility his own weakness and limitations, does not dare to violently interfere with the course of the pupil, to arbitrarily determine the direction he is to take, to force on him his own ideas, his own aims, and his own opinions. He would consider it a crime, treason against humanity.

With holy awe the teacher nourishes and nurses what is already existent, as if it were a plant which the Heavenly Father has planted. As he, in this spirit, in the true Christian spirit, full of unassuming modesty and self-devotion, absolutely respects human nature and works as a mere tool in the kingdom of God, so he stands there in priestly dignity as intermediary between the child and life. He is, in the

Socratic sense, the midwife of the child's human and spiritual independence, his individuality, *i.e.* the god-like idea in him, which is to become visible and active.

*The Method does not destroy Individuality*—The method, since it is positive, takes as its point of starting the individual child which it has before it. There is nowhere anything positive in education or in instruction, except just the child as individual and the individual power inherent in him. Everywhere, indeed, where method exists it is necessarily individualised and individualising.

It is therefore not possible to misconceive the nature of things and of man more completely than they do who maintain that a general system of education tends to destroy individuality. Its generality consists just simply in this, that it takes the individuality of each single child and cultivates it. The method does not desire to develop anything that does not already exist as capacity in the child, and again develops this capacity simply out of itself and from its own centre. The abundance and variety of these faculties and capacities, of this course and of these laws, may certainly confuse the weak and superficial observer to such an extent that, incapable of finding and holding fast their clue, he loses his way in the ocean of empiricism and arbitrary experiment. But Nature nevertheless claims her right, and the method will offer its faithful student the means of looking into the organism of her processes of education in order that he may at least have a glimmer of what he cannot clearly discern and let himself be guided by it. Just to recognise the capability, the individuality, in the child, to see his independence as individual, to

note how humanity shows itself in an infinite variety of forms, and is characteristic in countless ways in every single existence, and how yet again the same humanity appears in all, how each is a mirror of the whole, and how this whole reveals itself as the one, unvarying and eternal, more or less visible, in wider or narrower extent, with greater or less splendour: to see this is the rapture of the follower of the method, *i.e.* of the educator who recognises his task and his relation to mankind. It is his worth, his strength, his reward, the inexhaustible fountain of his love, and the inspiriting stimulus of his activity. However low and humble the single individual may be, however limited and imperfect his capacity, the educator considers him as an image of humanity; he reverently sees in him a revelation of the divine idea. With this aspect of man, the aspect of the whole of Nature is for him ennobled. He himself gains in nobility through the nobility of his profession, and in educating others he educates no one more than himself.

The degrading view of education, that the educator sacrifices himself to the child and thus loses as it were his own existence, so that another may be gained, this view, I say, disappears, for in gaining the pupil the educator gains himself.

*The Method is Positive from the Point of View of the Instruction* — Just as the method is positive in respect of the child, *i.e.* takes as its point of starting the individual in him, it is also positive in respect of the instruction or of the knowledge imparted. It takes as point of starting the independent in every subject it teaches. Its every aim, without exception,

is to bring the pupil not to reflection on what things are not, but to apperception, to immediate consciousness of what they really are. It starts from the principle that all human knowledge and all human art have real points of starting, in which every single science and every single art is contained as it were in germ. With the discovery of these originally individualised germs of knowledge and of art, true instruction and educational training in its widest sense are inseparably connected.

The method desires to help every one and to bring every one to the recognition of truth, *i.e.* as soon as he is capable of grasping it, and to give every one just that culture which he needs.

*The Method ought to be Universal*—From this point of view, then, it ought to be a universal method, and it must be so. Not according to the wrong idea that men, that the faculties, the characters, the opinions, and the conduct of the pupils are to be equalised, and the differences of rank and position to be obliterated. On the contrary, the method desires that every pupil should grow out of himself into his position and into his surroundings. Its universality lies in the principles stated above, that every human faculty in the child is based upon the same organic impulse, that all art, all knowledge, just because it is individual, has the same unvarying, eternally fixed elements for all and can never change its nature. For example, bodily development is eternally impossible without exercise and motion of the body. Mathematical talent can only develop in exercise on number and form, unity and plurality, dimension and figure, in their relations and combinations, and the gradual progress

of this exercise is in all ages determined by the intellectual organism of the human being, which itself again acts according to a determined order.<sup>1</sup>

To discover the object corresponding to every single sense of the human nature, the action which shall put into activity every single faculty of the child, and to present it in the form which the increasing capacity of those senses, the widening extension of these powers demand, that is the general principle, the realisation of which is the starting-point of the method.

*Relations of the Method to Realism, Formalism, Philanthropinism, and Humanism* — If, and so far as the method does that, it appears as actual intermediary between all the opposed principles of education, realism, formalism, philanthropinism, and humanism, it ought to satisfy at the same time the demands of human education, professional education, individual, civic, domestic, and public education. While immediately connecting instruction and teaching with the invariable and eternal in the surroundings of human nature and with its being, it not only succeeds in completely obliterating the opposition which has hitherto existed between elementary and applied instruction, but also that between formal and real education. It develops the faculty and the organ of knowledge by the communication of true knowledge, and, conversely, it creates true knowledge by the development of the organ of knowledge.

*The Method imitates Nature* — It imitates in the intellectual domain the sublime proceeding of Nature in the corporeal world. As Nature in every plant, at every stage of its growth, harmoniously develops mate-

<sup>1</sup> Other examples as regards language, the senses, etc., follow.

rial and form in their mutual commingling, and as every plant appears in the whole period of its growth, on the one hand complete in every point of its whole being, *i.e.* as a whole in harmonious correlation with itself, in no part and on no side of its growth, either too advanced or too retarded, on the other hand, incomplete, *i.e.* in perpetual growth; so the elementary method strives to have in the child, at every point of its education, material and form in mutual harmonious permeation, and the child of the method appears during the whole period of its education, on the one hand, complete in every point of this education, *i.e.* a whole, in harmonious correlation with himself, in no part and on no side of his growth, either too advanced or too retarded, on the other hand nevertheless incomplete, not brought to the aim of his maturity, but always still in perpetual growth.

Thus it makes its pupil capable of creating out of himself knowledge of life and art as an organic whole. If it is from the first point of view scientific, it is also from this point of view essentially, in the highest sense of the word, artistic. It is in its very essence Nature understood by man.

As richly endowed as Nature, it has receptivity, flexibility, and breadth of mind sufficient to embrace every plant that springs from the ground of humanity. A limited mind can limit it, and a fool can misuse it as the vessel of his own folly, but it remains, nevertheless, what it is, rightly understood in its true extent, not the work of single individuals, but the task of history, the business of human culture as a whole, the work of Nature herself in the course of the development of the human race. It will expand

and develop, as man gradually approaches the destiny appointed him by God, and as he step by step discovers the means which God has offered him in Himself and in Nature for its attainment.

*The Method imitates the Mother.* — Nowhere does the existence and coherence of the whole of the method find so pure and so awe-inspiring a form as it does in the conduct of the mother, whether perfectly educated or perfectly simple and humanly natural, toward her infant. This conduct is purely primitive, *i.e.* elemental. It is purely positive. It takes as its point of starting, without byways, without hesitation or doubt, the immediate perception of the child's needs, and proceeds to the immediate satisfaction of those needs. It is purely organic. The quickened faculties of the child sprout out in all directions as germs of future progress. It embraces at the same time the knowledge, the capacity, and the will of the child, and acts, nevertheless, in the most individual and positive fashion on each one of these. It is universal, because the needs of all children are essentially the same.

The child is, as individual, absolutely independent of the mother. The mother thinks not of herself, but of the child. His life, as it is, is her joy, and the care of this life her holiest task. As child, however, the individual in him is in this liberty at the same time obedient and subjected to the educated reason of the mother.

Such is the point of starting of the elementary method, which essentially consists in connecting in unbroken continuity all means of education to the essence of this purely maternal conduct toward the

child. Every other method is wrong, and can only serve as makeshift.

Just as every predominance of certain external faculties, of whatever kind these may be, destroys in us the inner unity, so through every predominance of one faculty, at the expense of another, we destroy in ourselves what is holiest in our nature.



7. ideas

## CHAPTER IV

### SENSE-PERCEPTION AS THE PSYCHOLOGICAL FOUNDATION OF INTELLECTUAL EDUCATION

Definition of *sense-perception*. — Origins of knowledge : chance, surroundings, personal will, calling and work, analogy and deduction. — Connection between the objects of *sense-perception* and social position. — Connection of the faculty of *sense-perception* with the faculty of thought. — *Sense-perception* is the foundation of judgment. — Transformation of *sense-perception* into conceptions and judgments. — Examples of perceptions. — Disadvantage of truths not recognised by perception. — General processes of *sense-perception* : precepts to observe. — Acquisition of notions by *sense-perception*. — Part which the senses play in perception. — Psychological foundation of intellectual education. — Course of instruction. — Psychological course of teaching. — Man is the centre of all *sense-perception*.

*Definition of Sense-perception* — *Sense-perception* considered by itself is nothing else than the mere being there of external objects before the senses and the mere stirring of the consciousness of their impression. *Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt, X, § 1.*

Thus the mere bringing of sounds to the ear and the mere stirring of the consciousness of the impression made on the sense of hearing is as *Ibid.*, much *sense-perception* for the child as the mere putting of things before his eyes and the mere stirring of his consciousness of the impression they make on his sense of sight. *§ 6.*

This is the beginning of all instruction given by Nature. It is the instruction received by the babe and given by the mother.

Human art has done nothing in order to keep up with Nature in this respect.

*Sense-perception* is the supreme principle of instruction, the *absolute foundation* of all knowledge. It is because the education of the time did not recognise this truth that it took a wrong road. It killed the very spirit of truth and extinguished in the human race the faculty of independence which is based on truth.

*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, IX, §§ 1, 2.

*Origins of Knowledge* — The origins of our knowledge are: —

1. *Chance*, or rather the impression of everything which chance brings into contact with our five senses. *Ibid.*, VII, § 51. But this kind of sense-perception is irregular, confused, and proceeds but slowly and only within certain limits.

2. *Surroundings*, *i.e.* everything which is presented to our senses by the intervention of the art and guidance of parents and teachers. This kind of sense-perception is naturally proportionate to the degree of insight and activity of the parents and teachers.

3. *Personal will*, *i.e.* the will of the subject to acquire knowledge and to arrive of himself at perceptions. The perceptions thus acquired give insight intrinsic value, and bring us nearer spontaneous action on our education.

4. *Calling* and *work* in general, *i.e.* the exertion and work of our calling, and generally of all activity which has not mere sense-perception as its object.

This kind of cognition connects our perceptions with situations and circumstances, brings the results of the same into harmony with our efforts toward duty and virtue, and has essentially, both by the compulsory character of its course and by the entire absence of our will in the attainment of the results, the most important influence on the justice, the uninterrupted continuity and the harmony of our insight, until we have attained the realisation of its aim, viz., *clearness of conception*.

5. *Analogy and Deduction* — Finally, the acquisition of knowledge by perception proceeds by *analogy*, in that it teaches us the nature, too, of such things as have never been presented to our direct sense-perception, but the similarity of which we deduce from other objects which have really been directly presented to our senses. This method of perception makes our progress in knowledge, which as result of actual direct sense-perception is only the work of our senses, the work of our mind and all our faculties, and we live thereby in as many kinds of perceptions as we have mental faculties ; but the word has with regard to these last perceptions a more comprehensive meaning than it has in ordinary speech, and embraces also the whole series of sentiments which are inseparable from the nature of our minds.

*Connection between the Objects of Sense-perception and Social Position* — The quantity and quality of the objects of *sense-perception*, *Schwanengesang*, § 52. as well as the sum of the means of utilising them for the cultivation of the mind, vary directly as the social conditions of the individuals

concerned. The quantity of these objects will naturally be more restricted for the man who cultivates the land than for the man who follows some profession or calling in the town, and will again be more restricted among these than among those destined for a scientific or literary career.

*Connection of the Faculty of Sense-perception with the Faculty of Thought*—The faculty of sense-perception, if it be not unnaturally led astray, leads man of itself, under all circumstances, to clear presentations on the objects of his surroundings, *i.e.* to so many single foundations of the natural quickening of his faculty of thought.

But so far as these clear presentations are only founded on sense-perception, and are only quickened by it, they can by no means satisfy human nature. For human nature wants to raise the presentations which have become clear to the senses to the rank of distinct conceptions; it wants by its own independent power to group the objects of its perception, to separate them, and to compare them one with the other; it wants to utilise them as a means of preparation for the development of its faculty of judgment; it wants to handle them logically. And its desire to do this is involuntary, irresistible. The power of the faculty of thought and judgment, latent in man, impels it inevitably to this desire.

*Sense-perception is the Foundation of Judgment*—If

*Wie Gertrud  
ihre Kinder  
lehrt, VII,  
§ 53.*

we admit that sense-perception is the foundation of all knowledge, it follows inevitably that accuracy of sense-perception is the real foundation of accurate judgment.

No judgment may be considered ripe if it is not obviously a result of a sense-perception, *Ibid.*, IV, perfect in all its parts, of the object on § 14. which a judgment is to be pronounced.

*Transformation of Sense-perceptions into Conceptions and Judgments*—The art of facilitating the transition from the clear consciousness of single *Schwanen-*objects of sense-perception to accurate *gesang*, § 69. thought and judgment on them, by naturally organised means of instruction, which have been arranged in psychological gradation, is in anything but a high degree of perfection and thoroughness in our hands. Since the creation of the world man has worked at the means of facilitating the transition from the elements of the culture of the faculty of sense-perception to the elements of the culture of the faculty of thought in the human race by art, and at raising the common sense which is gained by the simple perception of the objects of Nature to the rank of the logically assured faculty of thought and judgment.

But here again the path of Nature has been abandoned. Instead of carefully striving to group, to separate, and to compare correctly the objects perceived by the senses, people want more and more to teach children to think, on the one hand by arbitrary and unnatural extension of the number of subjects for reflection, regarded from a superficial and one-sided point of view, on the other by the learning of logic, *i.e.* by the—I do not know if I ought to say clear or subtle—explanation of the external laws which are the basis of the faculty of thought. But just as the first proceeding, instead of truly furthering the develop-

ment of the faculty of thought, on the contrary lays the greatest obstacles in its path; so on the other hand the external laws, which form the basis of the natural development of the human faculty of thought, can certainly not be understood in their truth and profundity by pupils who are not yet sufficiently prepared, by the actual grouping, separating, and comparing with one another of the objects they perceive, for the progressive use of the faculty of thought; they cannot, I say, be so understood that they themselves be regarded as the truly generally useful means of educating and strengthening this faculty. Under these conditions, logic remains for them a closed book.

*Examples of Perceptions* — Every child which has learned to observe (*anschauen*) with an elementary exactness the different conditions of water in repose or in motion, and its transmutations into dew, rain, vapour, steam, hoar-frost, hail, etc., then its action and its influence, on all its conditions, on other objects of nature, and to express himself thereupon with precision, has in himself the elements of the technical aspect of physical geography on all these objects. In the same way, every child which has learned to observe in an elementary manner the solution of salt or sugar in the kitchen, their reduction from their liquid to their solid condition, their crystallisation, or the fermentation of wine in the cellar, its turning sour and its transmutation into vinegar, or the transformation of alabaster into plaster, or marble into lime, sand into glass, etc., and to express itself with precision on all these subjects, likewise carries in himself the elements of perceptions

*Schwanengesang*, §§ 97, 98.

in the sciences, to the closer investigation of which these objects incite; just as a child which has learned to observe with an elementary exactness only a few farm-houses in all their parts, and to express himself thereupon with precision, carries in himself the elements of the knowledge of architecture in its essential parts.

It is incalculable how far the development of the faculty of perception, rightly treated from the cradle, may lead in cognition of scientific subjects, when it is founded on psychologically ordered exercises in sense-perception, and the way to intellectual abstract knowledge has naturally and thoroughly been paved. When the faculty is vigorous, the artificial assistance which must be rendered is easy; and when that is easy, good progress is made as a matter of course. A child which has been rightly directed to perception of number and form has already half crossed the bridge that leads to exercises in deduction in arithmetic and geometry before the actual exercises in deduction can naturally even have been begun with him. These last exercises, if they are to be given naturally, presuppose a faculty of perception which has been brought to a high degree of maturity.

*Disadvantage of Truths not recognised by Perception*  
— Every merely superficially recognised truth, which is not based in its essential parts on perception, and has not been submitted to the scrutiny of thought, remains in human nature in the air, so to speak. It has no means of connecting itself naturally with other truths, with which it is really in relation, and innumerable superficially recognised truths have less educative action on the development

*Ibid.*, § 145.

of the faculty of thought than a single one, sufficiently based on perception, and recognised in all its extent by the faculty of thought.

Superficially recognised truths cannot by any means conduce to the harmony of our faculties, which is the supreme aim, both of the course of nature in the development of the same, and of the whole complex of all artificial means of education.

*General Processes of Sense-perception: Precepts to observe* — First learn how to arrange your perceptions *Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, IV, § 14. and attain a complete mastery over the simple elements before you proceed to something more complicated. Try to form in every art a succession of steps, in which each new idea is only a slight, an almost imperceptible addition to knowledge already deeply imprinted on and made indelible in the memory.

Secondly, bring in your mind all essentially related objects into exactly that connection with one another in which they really are in nature. Subordinate in your mind all non-essentials to essentials, and subordinate especially the impression made by the artificial aspect, to that made by nature and its real truth, and give nothing a greater importance in your mind than it has in nature relatively to the human race.

Strengthen and give clearness to the impressions of important things by artificially bringing them nearer to you, and letting them act on various senses. Bear in mind to this end above all the law of physics, which lays down that the magnitude of the action of objects on our senses varies directly as the distance of those objects from our senses. Never forget that the



physical proximity or remoteness has invariably an infinitely great influence on the positive element of your opinions, and on your circumstances, your duties, and your very virtue.

Consider all actions of physical nature as absolutely necessary, and recognise in this necessity the result of the power with which it unites the seemingly heterogeneous elements of its material in order to effect the complete attainment of its aim, and see to it that you also raise to a physical necessity the art with which you act on the instruction of your fellow-creatures, and also the results at which it aims, so that in all you do, even the apparently most heterogeneous means may serve in the attainment of the same chief aim.

But in consequence of the rich variety and diversity of attraction and the wide scope, the results of physical necessity generally assume the stamp of freedom and independence. Look to it, then, that you too, while striving to raise the results of art and of instruction to the level of a physical necessity, nevertheless give them, by means of rich variety and diversity of attraction and latitude of scope, the stamp of freedom and independence.

*Acquisition of Notions by Sense-perception* — All the objects which impinge on my senses are for me only so far means of attaining correct notions, *Ibid.*, V, § 2. as their outward appearance causes their unvarying immutable essence rather than their varying, changing condition to impinge on my senses — they are on the contrary for me so far sources of error or illusion, if their appearance cause their accidental condition especially to impinge on my senses.

To every perceptive notion which has been imprinted

and made indelible by the completeness of its impression on the human mind, a whole succession of more or less related subordinate ideas associate themselves with great ease, practically without our volition.

By the grouping of objects which have the same essential qualities, your insight into the inner truth of the same is made essentially and generally wider, acuter, and surer; the one-sided preponderating impression of the nature of single objects is weakened to the gain of the impression which its essence ought to make on you. The entangling of your mind by the isolated force of single impressions is hindered, and you are preserved from the danger of thoughtlessly confounding the external appearances of objects with their essence, from an exaggerated preference for any one thing, which a better insight would have caused you to put into a subordinate position and from the fantastic filling of your head with such subordinate things.

Thus the more man has acquired wide and general insight into things and into their essence, the less he will be misled by limited and exclusive insight, and conversely.

Even the most complicated perception is composed of simple elements. If you have come to definite clearness on these, the most complicated will be simple to you.

*Part which the Senses play in Perception* — The more we use our senses in recognising the essence or the varying aspects of an object, the more accurate will be our knowledge of this object.

*Psychological Foundation of Intellectual Education. Course of Instruction* — Pestalozzi was soon convinced

by experience that elementary instruction did not merely consist of reading, writing, and arithmetic, and that these subjects, far from being the elements of instruction, ought, on the contrary, to be subordinated to much wider points of view. He gradually discovered that a child must be taught to speak before he is taught to read, to draw before he is taught to write, and to measure before he is taught to draw.

*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, VI, §§ 1-5.

Every line, every measure, every word, is the result of the intelligence that is created by ripened sense-perceptions, and ought to be considered as a means to realise the progressive clearness of our ideas. The principles of teaching must then be deducted from the unvarying original type of the development of the human mind.

The world lies at our feet like a sea of confused perceptions; it is the work of art, *i.e.* of instruction, to dissipate this confusion, by separating the objects the one from the other, by grouping together those which are similar, in order to make them more clear to our senses, and thus enable us to form clear conceptions of them. Teaching attains this end by presenting the confused perceptions singly to our eyes, then by showing us them in their varying conditions, and finally by bringing them into connection with the whole sphere of our knowledge.

Thus our knowledge proceeds from confused perceptions (*Verwirrung*) to definite perceptions (*Bestimmtheit*), from definite perceptions to clear perceptions (*Klarheit*), and from clear perceptions to distinct ideas (*Deutlichkeit*).

*Psychological Course of Teaching*—The natural transition from the impressions of sense-perceptions to *Schwanen-* the development and quickening of the *gesang*, § 73. faculty of thought has as its starting-point the fact of grouping, separating, and comparing the objects of perception. The child has a natural instinct to do this. It is for the human race to confine this instinct to its natural course, and not leave the education of it to chance.

It is essentially important not to transform into exercises of the intelligence what is only worth anything as an exercise of the memory, and *Idee der Elem.*, § 226. not to use what is only suitable to develop the mechanical skill of the hand, as if it were a means of development of the intellect and of the artistic faculty.

Just so it is essential to keep exercises in the memorising of words apart from exercises in imprinting on the memory perceptions gained through the senses. For if we do not, we shall produce confusion in the children's minds, which must arise, if we mix important things and things of no consequence in our teaching, which is like people for a joke putting peel into a child's mouth, instead of the fruit itself.

*Man is the Centre of all Sense-perception*—The clearness of our recognition of things varies directly as their distance from our senses, *Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, VI, §§ 6, 7. for man is nothing else than his five senses.

Man is therefore himself the centre of all sense-perception and is an object of sense-perception to himself. Everything that you are yourself is easier

for you to make clear and distinct in your mind than everything outside you. Everything you feel yourself is in itself a definite perception. Only what is outside you can be a confused perception for you. Everything you are conscious of, you are definitely conscious of. Everything you know yourself is in you, and defined by you. Consequently the way to definite conceptions opens itself more easily and more surely on this road than on any other, and nothing can be more lucid than the lucidity of this principle, — the knowledge of truth by man has as its starting-point man's knowledge of himself.

## CHAPTER V

### THE METHOD OF SENSE-PERCEPTION OR ELEMENTARY METHOD

1. **FIRST INSTRUCTION OF THE CHILD.** — The ego as the centre of education : disadvantages of emulation. — First instruction of the child. — The book for mothers. — Pestalozzi's experiment on a child of three. — The first books. — Principles of the first education. — Importance of vocabulary and nomenclature.
2. **DESCRIPTION OF THE METHOD IN APPLICATION.** — Intensive and not extensive education. — Language as the basis of instruction. — Simplification of the mechanism of instruction. — Popularisation of science. — The book is to replace the teacher. — Mutual instruction.
3. **EDUCATIONAL PRINCIPLES AND OBSERVATIONS DERIVED FROM PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE.** — The method supplements everything, even science.
4. **ELEMENTS OF THE METHOD.** — Number, Form, Language.
5. **METHODS OF APPLICATION.** — A. Sound. — *a.* Study of sounds used in speaking. — *b.* Study of sounds used in singing. — Study of language. — Number and form. — Disadvantage of the catechetical method. — Examples of application. — Importance of language. — Novelty of the method. — Development of language. — The study of language : its point of starting and its aim. — Part played by grammar. — Relation of language to sense-perception and thought. — Study of foreign languages. — How the child learns his mother-tongue.  
B. Form and number. — Drawing.

## 1. FIRST INSTRUCTION OF THE CHILD

*The Ego considered as the Centre of Education* — The ego of the child, as centre of the independent development of the mind, is divided, as elementary education is, from the very beginning and in its essence into three parts. As in elementary education we must consider the education of the heart, the education of the mind, and the education of the body, so the *Book for Mothers* must teach the child, starting from himself as a whole, from his ego, to consider himself as heart, as mind, and as body.

As body, he is an object for self-perception and feeling; as mind, an object for activity and consciousness of self; as heart, an object for activity of will and sentiment.

The existence of each of these three faculties is again divided from the point of view of space and of time, and from the point of view of activity and receptivity.

The child must then of necessity learn to study himself, *i.e.* he must become objective to himself.

The *Book for Mothers* is based on this principle. The child is brought into connection with everything that concerns him. As he is obliged to search for all the objects which he names, himself, he sets in activity his faculties of perception and observation. When he has considered extensive existence, *i.e.* his existence considered from the point of view of space, his limbs, their qualities, their external relations, he proceeds to the faculties and activities of his temporal existence, *i.e.* his existence considered from the point of view of

time, of his faculty of receptivity and of activity, his senses and powers, and thereby becomes more conscious of himself, and awakes thus to a sensation, to a glimmer of consciousness of his relations to Nature and to his surroundings, which sensation becomes more and more clear and comprehensive. In connected consistent progress the sensible and the intellectual unite to form the unity of knowledge in him. The exterior and the interior, the subjective and objective, the power of knowledge and of speech, connect themselves the one to the other. As the outward uniting bond is language, so the inner uniting bond is the child's ego, *i.e.* his consciousness, his sense-perception, his feeling of himself. The pupil enters with full innocence and childlike ingenuousness indeed, but at the same time with calm self-confidence, into the domain of the knowledge and experience of himself, of the world, and of men. He learns how to know himself, to be conscious of himself, yet without presumption, and to move freely in the necessary limits and relations of his nature. It is true he does not attain the power of speaking on every subject; he cannot and he does not want to. But his speech is the speech of truth and the outcome of actual feeling, not of seeming and illusion.

*Disadvantages of Emulation*—The child educated in the spirit of the elementary education is exercised in every moral, intellectual, and artistic *Idee der Elem.*, § 65. respect to seek the stimulus for the exertion of his powers in the use of these very powers. This power to depend on his own resources on all occasions has been made habitual to him by the method. He compares himself with no one, in no particular.



Just as with respect to morality, he only asks himself, "Am I good because I fear God, because I exercise my moral faculties?" and never, "Am I better than another?" so with respect to intellect, he asks himself, "Can I solve the problem assigned me, or can I not?" and never, "Can I solve it better than any one else?" He knows no measure of his power outside himself, and the present time knows none and seeks none in us.

The intense joy which the child feels at the discovery of a truth renders superfluous the means which consists in exciting emulation by increasing the self-love of the ones and humiliating the others.

The first hour of the instruction of the child is the hour of his birth. Nature instructs him from the moment at which his senses become capable of receiving her impressions. *Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt, I, §§ 33-36.*

All teaching is then nothing else than the art of helping this striving of nature after its own development, and this art is essentially based on the proportion and harmony of the impressions which are to be made on the child's senses with the degree of his developed power. There is, then, a certain sequence to observe in the impressions which must be made on the child by the teaching, and the beginning and continuation of these impressions must keep step with the child's developing powers. It is on the observation of this principle that the composition of elementary books which shall be really appropriate to our nature and our needs rests.

The child must not begin to learn to read, nor even

to learn his letters, until he has been brought to an advanced stage of knowledge of language and knowledge of things to be gained by sense-perception.

It is wrong to teach children to read and write before the child really knows how to talk, and to think that he really knows how to talk before he is capable of feeling and thinking. The child must then first be taught to feel and to think, then to talk, and lastly to read and write.

The child should have attained a high degree of perceptive knowledge, and also knowledge of his own language, before it is reasonable to teach him to read or even to teach him his letters.

Children need from their earliest years psychological direction toward the reasonable sense-perception of all things.

*Pestalozzi's Experiment on a Child of Three* — Pestalozzi describes to us his application of his method on a child of three years of age, to whom he devoted an hour a day. "I experimented with letters, figures, and everything that came into my hands in teaching him, *i.e.* in attaining by all these means definite perceptions and expressions. I made him name precisely what he recognised in every object, — colour, parts, position, form, and number. I soon had to leave aside the first torment of youth, *viz.*, those wretched letters of the alphabet. He would have nothing but pictures and objects, and soon he expressed himself precisely on objects which lay in the sphere of his cognition. He found in street, garden, and room general illustrations of his knowledge, and soon came to be capable of pronouncing correctly the most difficult names of plants and animals, and of comparing objects which

he had never seen before with others with which he was already familiar, and also was soon capable of creating a definite perception of them in his mind; and although this experiment generally led us astray, and worked for the benefit of what was strange and remote to the disadvantages of the impressions created by what was present and near, nevertheless in many cases it shed light on the means of quickening the child in his dispositions, and of inciting him to self-activity in the preservation of his power. On the other hand, the experiment was not satisfactory as regards what I actually sought, because the boy had already three utterly unused years behind him, and I am convinced that Nature brings children before this age to the most definite consciousness of innumerable objects. It is only necessary for us to form the connection between psychological, artificial speech and this consciousness to bring it in them to a high degree of clearness, and thereby render them capable of connecting both, the foundations of many-sided art and many-sided truth, to what Nature has already taught them; and again to use what Nature has already taught them as means of explaining all the foundations of the art and the truth we desire to teach them. The capacity and the experience of children at this age are already great; but our unpsychological schools are essentially nothing but artificial machines which strangle those results of capacity and experience which Nature herself has called in the child into life.

*The First Books* — To bring the child to perception of things by the senses, we must have, before we have A B C books, object-lesson books to make clear and luminous to him by perception (by the help of well-

chosen real objects, which are either presented to his senses in their actuality, or in well-executed pictures or models) the notions which we wish to give him by speech.

The first books must start from the most simple elements of human knowledge; they must deeply impress on the child's mind the most essential forms of all things; they must develop clearly at an early age in him the first consciousness of the relations of number and space; they must furnish him with words and language for the whole extent of his consciousness and his experiences, and form easy, shallow steps out of the first rungs on the ladder of knowledge, by which Nature herself leads us to all art and all power.

The lack of books of this kind leaves a great gap.

*Principles of the First Education* — One should never reason with very young children, but should confine oneself in the development of their minds: *Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, I, §§ 43-61. 1, to extend more and more the circle of their sense-perception; 2, to impress the perceptions of which they are conscious surely and distinctly on their minds; 3, to give them comprehensive knowledge of language for everything which Nature or art has presented or will present to their consciousness.

As these three points of view became daily clearer to Pestalozzi, a firm conviction gradually developed in his mind: 1, of the need of object-lesson books for the earliest years; 2, of the necessity of a clear and definite method of explaining these books; 3, of the need of a direction, based on these books and their

method of explanation, to names and knowledge of words, which must be made familiar to the child, even before the time has arrived of teaching him his letters.

*Importance of Vocabulary and Nomenclature*—The advantage to children of an early consciousness of and fluent use of a rich vocabulary is inestimable. The firm impression of the names impresses, too, the things themselves indelibly on their memory as soon as they are brought to their consciousness, and the stringing of names, if based on truth and accuracy, develops and maintains in them the consciousness of the actual relations of the things. The advantages of all this are progressive. One must only never think that because the child does not understand everything about a thing, that it is therefore of no use at all to him.

## 2. DESCRIPTION OF THE METHOD IN APPLICATION

This is how Fischer, who closely followed Pestalozzi's efforts, described the method which he saw applied at . . . <sup>1</sup> *Ibid.*

“Pestalozzi's method is based on the following psychological principles:—

“*Intensive and not Extensive Education*—1. He desires to raise the intensity of the powers of the mind, and not only to enrich it extensively with ideas. He hopes to attain this by many ways. By repeating aloud to the children again and again words, explanations, sentences, and lengthy periods, and making the children repeat them after him, he hopes not only to

<sup>1</sup> Letter to Steinmüller, published in the *Bibliothèque des maîtres d'école helvétiques*, St. Gall, 1801.

attain the immediate separate object which every single exercise has, but also to form the voice, exercise the attention, and strengthen the memory. For the same reason he makes them while repeating aloud after him draw lines, curves, or letters on their slates."

Pestalozzi remarks here that he has found by experience that children have a sense of proportion, and can wield a slate pencil several years sooner than they can wield a pen, or make small letters, and therefore he made them at an early age draw lines, angles, and arcs, and commit the definitions of these to memory.

"With this object in view, Pestalozzi distributes thin films of transparent horn among his pupils; on these films strokes and letters are engraved, and the pupils use them the more easily as models that they can lay them on the figures they have drawn, and as the horn is transparent, they can make the necessary comparisons. A twofold occupation at the same time is a preparation for the thousand cases and the occupations in life in which the attention must be divided without being distracted. Industrial schools, for instance, are founded on the basis of this possibility."

*Language as the Basis of Instruction* — "2. He connects his instruction entirely with language."

Pestalozzi corrects this as follows: He considers speech, after the true observation of Nature, as the first means of attaining knowledge which man possesses. He takes here a point of starting the principle that the child must learn to speak before it reasonably can be taught to read. But Pestalozzi adds that he connected the art of teaching children to speak with the perceptions which Nature gives

them and with those which are to be given them by art.

“As a matter of fact, the results of all human progress are deposited in language; all that remains for us to do is to follow them psychologically on their path.”

(Pestalozzi here remarks that the clue to this psychological pursuit must be sought in the very nature of the development of language. The savage first names an object, then determines it, finally combines it, but in a very simple fashion, and only later attains the power of more precisely determining the varying presentations of it, with regard to time and circumstances, by endings and combinations of words.)

“Pestalozzi will not reason with the children until he has given them a supply of words and expressions, which they learn to apply in their sphere, to combine and to dissect. Therefore he enriches their memory with simple explanations of sensible objects, and teaches the child thereby to describe what he sees around him, and consequently to give an account of his presentations, and attain a mastery over them, in now first attaining a clear consciousness of those which were already latent in him.”

(Pestalozzi thinks that to bring children to reason, and to put them on the path of an independent mental power, one must, as far as possible, prevent them from thoughtlessly using their tongues, and not let them utter an opinion on things of which they have only a superficial knowledge. “I believe,” says he, “that the time of learning is not the time of judging; the time of judging begins when we have finished learning, when the causes which one judges, and may rightly

judge, are mature ; and I believe that every judgment which is to have inner truth for the individual who utters it, must fall as ripe and perfect from a comprehensive knowledge of their causes as the ripened kernel falls of itself, freely and without rough handling, perfect out of the shell.”)

“He imparts mechanical ease, and a certain rhythm in speaking, by making them repeat easy exercises in declension aloud all together.”

(Pestalozzi remarks that this was restricted to the names of sensible objects with which they were already familiar.)

“They hereby gain an exceptional ease, and when they have learned by many examples to recognise and employ certain forms of definition, they bring, later on, the names of a thousand other objects, which suggest themselves, into the same forms, and give their explanations and definitions the stamp of a precision that is acquired through the senses.”

(Pestalozzi. “At the present time I am seeking in number, measure, and language the general and primary fundamentals for this purpose.”)

“3. He strives to furnish data, or rubrics, or leading ideas for all operations of the mind.”

(Pestalozzi explains that he seeks in all the extent of art and nature the fundamental points, the methods of perception, the facts which, by their definiteness and generality, may be used as fruitful means of facilitating the recognition and judgment of many subordinat e or related objects, and thus he furnishes the children with data, which call their attention to similar objects ; he endorses for them series of analogous conceptions, by the definition of which the whole



succession of series of objects may be classified and precised according to their essential differences.)

“These data, however widely they may be scattered in their presentation, are connected the one with the other. They are presentations of which the one refers to the other, and therefore inspire the desire of discovery in the mind, through the human longing for the completion and for the facilitated combination of separate elements.

“The rubrics guide to the classification of the ideas which are to be received; they bring order into their chaotic mass; and the framework thus erected causes the child all the more busily to fill up the separate divisions. This is true of the chief rubrics of geography, natural history, etc. Moreover, the analogy which exists in the choice of the objects comes to the aid of the memory.

“The guiding ideas lie in certain problems, which are, or could be made, the subject-matter of whole sciences. If these questions, resolved into their component parts, are presented in an intelligible form to the child, based on data, which it already has or easily finds, and are used as exercises in observation, they tend to make the child's mind work incessantly on their solution. The simple question, ‘What objects in the three natural kingdoms can man use for his clothing?’ gives an example of this course. The child will consider and examine many things from this point of view, of which he has an idea that they may furnish him with a contribution to the solution of this technological problem. In this manner he himself constructs the knowledge which he is to acquire. To be sure, the necessary material must be offered him in every possible manner.

“To the guiding ideas also belong sentences, which are at first only committed to memory as practical maxims, but by slow degrees acquire force, application, and meaning, and thereby impress themselves more deeply, and take a more lasting hold on the mind.”

*Simplification of the Mechanism of Instruction*—4.

“He desires to simplify the mechanism of teaching and learning.<sup>1</sup> What he includes in his text-books and will have the children taught, ought to be so simple that every mother, and later on every teacher, with a minimum of capacity, could comprehend it, expound, explain, and combine it. Above all he desires by means of easy lessons in speaking and reading to make the first education of their children pleasant and interesting to mothers, and thus, as he expresses it, to do away with the necessity of elementary schools, or at least supplement them by an improved home education.

“Just for this very reason he wants to make experiments with mothers as soon as his text-books are printed, and it is to be hoped that government will cooperate by offering small prizes to be competed for.”

(Pestalozzi recognises the difficulties on this head. It is the general cry that the mothers will not allow themselves to be persuaded to add new work to their

<sup>1</sup> “It is incontestable that the human mind is not equally receptive of the impressions which are to be made by the instruction in every form in which they are presented. The art of discovering those forms which must excite its receptivity is the mechanism of the art of instruction which every teacher should investigate in Nature, and should learn from her to the profit of his art.” (Pestalozzi's note to the above.)

cleaning and washing, to their knitting and sewing, to all the toils of their domestic avocations, and to all the distractions of their life. "But," he says, "it is not work, it is play." It robs them of no time, on the contrary it fills the emptiness of a thousand weary moments. People have no understanding for this, and keep on saying, "But they won't do it." Father Boniface said the same thing, when he declared to Zwingli, in 1519, that mothers would never consent to read the Bible with their children, and in 1522, when he found he was mistaken, he cried, "I would not have believed it!" Pestalozzi is sure of his means and hopes that a new Father Boniface will utter the same cry as the original one did in 1522.)

*Popularisation of Science* — "5. He wants to popularise science." This is connected with the preceding.

(Pestalozzi explains that he only wants to attain for all men the faculties of perception and thought which are necessary for all who would lead wise and independent lives.)

"This is to be attained by the composition of text-books, which shall contain the chief elements of science, expressed in well-chosen words and sentences, and at the same time furnish the mighty blocks out of which later on the building can easily be constructed."

(Pestalozzi remarks here, the text-books themselves should be nothing else than an artificial connection of the instruction in all its branches, with that which Nature herself does for the development of men in all conditions and in all circumstances; the artificial preparation of the faculties which man needs, for the easy use of what Nature herself does in all branches of his development.)

“Further, the text-books are to be distributed gratis, or sold at a low price. They must form a series and a whole. For the same end he would have maps, geometrical figures, etc., printed and sold at a very low price, the profits to be devoted to the foundation of an institute, school, or orphanage.”

(Pestalozzi says this is going too far. He cannot give all the profits to an orphanage, but he promises to give the greater part and to continue to his death to devote himself and all his energies to the orphanage, if government or private individuals render possible the foundation of an orphanage carried on according to his principles.)

*The Book is to replace the Teacher* — “It will be a great gain to school instruction if the teacher, given a minimum of energy, cannot only not harm, but may even make right progress possible.”

(Pestalozzi considers this an essential point. He believes that it is not conceivable that popular education can advance a single step, until forms of instruction shall have been found, which will make the teacher, at any rate for all elementary knowledge, the mere mechanical tool of a method, the results of which must spring forth by reason of their own nature, and not by the art of the man directing. I assume as absolutely true, that a text-book is only so far good as an uninstructed schoolmaster can use it, at any rate as far as his absolute needs are concerned, almost as well as one who is educated and gifted. It must essentially be so constructed, that the unlearned man, and even the mother, may find sufficient direction in its guiding clue, to be always a step farther than the child itself in the artificial, progressive development

to which it is to lead the child. More is not necessary, and more you will not be able to give the mass of schoolmasters, at any rate for centuries to come.)

*Mutual Instruction* — “A further gain in this direction will be that many children can be taught at the same time, emulation can be awakened, and the mutual communication among the pupils themselves of the matter acquired facilitated; and the existing cumbersome methods of enriching the memory by other artificial means, by analogy of matter taught, order, increased attention, repeating aloud, etc., may be avoided or at least abbreviated.”

### 3. EDUCATIONAL PRINCIPLES AND OBSERVATIONS DERIVED FROM PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE

Pestalozzi prefaces that these are mere observations founded on practical experience, and must not be considered in the light of matured educational truths, but only as initial views which develop gradually into the fuller and more definite form of educational principles.

*Wie Gertrud  
ihre Kinder  
lehrt*, II, §§  
17-23.

*General Rules* — By a well-ordered nomenclature indelibly printed on the memory a general foundation in all branches of knowledge may be laid, on which teachers and taught may build spontaneously, and slowly but surely, clear conceptions on all subjects of knowledge.

Pestalozzi obtained a sureness in clear conception of all things in his pupils' minds and a manual dexterity, by exercising them in free-hand drawing of lines, angles, and curves, the results of which must decidedly have tended to make everything in the sphere of

their perceptive experience gradually assume a clear and definite form.

The exercising of children in the rudiments of arithmetic with real objects, or at any rate with dots to represent these, must give a solid foundation to arithmetic in its whole extent, and must secure the further progress from error and confusion.

The definitions of walking, standing, lying, sitting, etc., committed by the pupils to memory, showed the connection of the rudimentary principles with the aim which, according to Pestalozzi, should be kept in view, viz., the rendering of all conceptions clear and distinct. By making children define objects which are so clear to them that experience can contribute nothing to their greater precision, one deters them, on the one hand, from the presumption of trying to define anything they do not know; while on the other, one gives them a power of defining what they really do know, that enables them to define consistently, precisely, briefly, and comprehensively everything in the whole sphere of their perceptive knowledge.

Truth which springs from perception renders superfluous wearisome discourse and the manifold stratagems now in use, which have approximately as much effect against error and prejudice as the ringing of church bells against the dangers of a thunderstorm; for such a truth creates in man a power which of itself excludes the possibility of the penetration of prejudice or error into his mind, and where, in consequence of the eternal chatter of our species, these do reach his ears, they remain so isolated that they cannot have the same injurious effect as they have on the average individual of our time, who have

truth and error, both without sense-perception, accompanied by mere cabalistic incantations, flashed on their minds, as it were, by a magic lantern.

The collecting of plants, and the discussions to which this has given rise, have shown that the whole extent of knowledge which is gained by the use of our senses springs from observation of Nature, and from the industrious collecting and retaining of everything she offers to our knowledge.

*The Method supplements Everything, even Science*— All that the schoolmaster has to do is to learn how to use the method, in order to bring himself and his pupils to all the ends which should be attained by instruction. Consequently what is needed is not erudition, but sound common-sense and practice in the method.

The principle of beginning with what is easiest and perfecting the pupil in that before proceeding further, then of adding in gradual progress always only a very little to what is already perfectly learned, will, not certainly actually produce, but at any rate keep alive in the pupils a confidence and a consciousness of power which is a high testimonial to their unweakened, innate strength.

It is only necessary, then, to lead the children, never to drive them.

Formerly the teacher was obliged, in every subject of instruction, to keep on saying: "Think. Do you not remember?" It cannot be otherwise. If, for instance, in the arithmetic lesson he asks, "How many times is seven contained in sixty-three?" the child has no sensualised background for its answer, and has to discover it with difficulty by reflection; now, accord-

ing to the method, nine times seven objects appear before his eyes, and he has learned to count them as nine rows of sevens; consequently, he no longer needs to think about this question, he knows perfectly from what he has already learned the answer to the question he now hears for the first time, viz., that seven is contained nine times in sixty-three. And similarly in all subjects of the method.

Consequently appealing to reflection is not included in Pestalozzi's method. Every exercise must flow spontaneously and easily from what the child already knows.

It was noted that the words and pictures which Pestalozzi laid separately before the child in teaching them to read, made an impression on their minds very different to that made by the compound phrases which ordinary school instruction generally presents them with. For these phrases are of such a nature that the child could have no sense-perception of the nature of the separate words, and they see in these combinations no simple component parts which they already know, but a tangle of incomprehensible combinations of unknown objects, by which they are led, contrary to their nature, contrary to their faculties, and with manifold delusion, to work themselves into series of thoughts, which are not only absolutely strange to them in their essence, but are also couched in an artificial language, of which they have not even tried to learn the rudiments.

Pestalozzi condemns the hotch-potch (*Mischmasch*) of the school knowledge of his time. He always gives his children, as Nature gives savages, only one image at a time, and then seeks to find a word for this



image. This simplicity of presentation creates in them no judgments and no conclusions, as nothing is presented to them as doctrine, or taught them in any kind of connection with truth or error, but everything is presented to them as mere material for sense-perception, and as a background for future judgments and conclusions.

#### 4. ELEMENTS OF THE METHOD

*Number, Form, Language*—The fundamental elements of the method appeared suddenly to Pestalozzi like a *Deus ex machina*.

*Wie Gertrud  
ihre Kinder  
lehrt, VI,  
§§ 8-13.*

Number, form, and language are the means of rendering all our perceptions clear and distinct.

When a confused conglomeration of objects is brought before our eyes, and we wish to dissect it and gradually make it clear to ourselves, we have to consider three things: 1, how many things and how many kinds of things there are before our eyes, *i.e.* their number; 2, what they are like, *i.e.* their form; 3, what they are called, *i.e.* their names.

Number, form, and language, then, together form the elementary means of all instruction, for the sum of the exterior qualities of an object is to be found in the limits of its surface, *i.e.* are limited by its form, in the relation of its number, and are made to belong to our consciousness by language.

The art of education must therefore make it a fixed law to take this threefold foundation as its point of starting, and strive: 1, to teach children to regard every object which is brought to their consciousness

as a unity, *i.e.* separated from those objects with which it seems connected;

2, to teach them to realise the form of every object, *i.e.* its size and proportions;

3, to make them acquainted, at as early an age as is possible, with the whole extent of the vocabulary appertaining to and the names of all the objects they know.

The first efforts of art must then be directed to form with the highest psychological skill, to strengthen and to give power to the fundamental faculties of counting, measuring, and speaking, and consequently to bring the means of the development and education of these three faculties to its utmost simplicity, its highest consistency, and to the greatest harmony with itself.

The only difficulty which occurred to Pestalozzi was the question, Why are not all the qualities of the things which are made known to us by our senses just such elements of our knowledge as number, form, and name?

The answer is very simple: All possible objects must have number, form, and name, but no other quality is common to all.

All the other qualities, therefore, cannot be considered as elements of knowledge. Pestalozzi also remarked that all the other qualities of the things which are made known to us by the medium of our five senses are capable of being directly connected with these elements of human knowledge; whence he concludes, that in the instruction of children the knowledge of all the other qualities of the objects must be immediately connected to the previously

acquired knowledge of form, number, and name. Through the consciousness of the unity, form, and name of an object our perception of it becomes a definite conception; by gradual cognition of all its other qualities, it becomes a clear conception; by the cognition of the connection of all its other characteristics it becomes a distinct conception.

Sound, form, and number, then, are the points of starting taken by Nature herself for all instruction. In the same way all progress in instruction should be guided up to its perfection, in the limits of an uninterrupted course, which occupies all the elementary powers at the same time, and maintains equilibrium among them, by which alone it is made possible to conduct in all these three divisions uniformly from confused sense-perception to definite perception, from definite perception to clear conception, and from clear conception to distinct conception.

Thus art is essentially and most ultimately connected with nature, and the problem, to find a common origin of all artificial means of instruction, and the form in which the education of the human race may be determined, by the very essence of our nature, solved.

Pestalozzi comes back in another of his works to these three elements of our knowledge, *Idee der Elem.*, §§ 30-34 which, he says, "are latent in the organization of man's intellectual nature, and are the product of its activity. They are of a positive nature, they cannot be brought to the child's perception without exercising his hand and his eye, without exciting pleasure and feeling, without setting in activity heart and will.

The method which is based on these elements differs especially from methods hitherto employed, in that these latter gave conceptions without elements, and ideas without sense-perception.

The exercises on number are especially calculated to develop the faculty of pure intellectual deduction, from its first germ to its perfection.

The exercises on form likewise develop this faculty, both by the inevitable and necessary impression which they make, and by the results of the uninterrupted continuity and exhaustive nature of the combinations of straight and curved lines, and the relations and proportions actually existing, which are deduced from these.

All truth, and all the deductions which are made by the help of number, develop spontaneously from the pure essence of the human faculty of thought, *i.e.* the faculty of thought develops by the use of these means as it were of itself.

On the other hand, all truth, and all the deductions which are made by the help of form, are contained as pure and perfect products of the mind in the essence of straight and curved lines, and in the combinations which it is possible to make of them.

Both kinds of exercises lead not only to the recognition of truth, but also decidedly to its discovery. They not only exercise the faculty of thought in their examination, but also quicken the faculty of imagination and incite it to free play in the search for and creative combination of them.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> However, it is not advisable to make this study obligatory on all the pupils, but only on the more gifted ones. (*Schwanengesang*, § 72.)

Language is no less an absolute condition of the development of the humanity of our nature. It is the means given to man by which above all he can express what he knows, feels, desires, and hopes. Language, regarded in its most general pedagogic sense, is the sum of man's intellectual consciousness of himself and Nature.

Without language the child cannot become distinctly conscious of his sense-perceptions and his impressions of Nature, and cannot be conducted to the recognition of even the first elements of number and *form*.

*Perception* in the intellectual world connects itself with *language*, just as *sense-perception* in the material world attaches itself to outward Nature, and just as outward Nature sums up the material world, so language is the sensible manifestation of the intellectual world enclosed in our mind.

Considered as a pedagogic element, *language*, like *form* and *number*, is independent of the objects on which it exercises its power, but is confined in the means of its development to the means of development of the human faculties which have gone before. The course to follow must therefore be the same as for *form* and *number*. The child must learn to *speak* exactly in the same way as it has learned to *think*. This is the secret of the wonderful *harmony* of the method.

## 5. METHODS OF APPLICATION

A. *Sound*

The first elementary means of instruction is *sound*.

From *sound* we derive the following special means of instruction:—

*Wie Gertrud  
ihre Kinder  
lehrt*, VII,  
§§ 1-5.

1. *The study of sounds*, or the means of forming the organs of speech.
2. *The study of words*, or the means of teaching the pupil to know single objects.
3. *The study of language*, or the means of teaching the pupil to express himself on all the objects he knows, and on all their qualities.

1. *Study of Sounds*

The study of sounds is divided into two parts:—

(a) The study of sounds used in *speaking*.

(b) The study of sounds used in *singing*.

(a) *The Study of Sounds used in Speaking*— We must on no account leave to chance the manner in which *spoken sounds* are brought to the child's ears. It is important that the consciousness of these sounds should be developed in his mind, before the first letters are put before his eyes, and the first exercises in reading begun with him.

The first reading book must therefore contain all the sounds of which the language consists, and these should be brought in every household to the ears of the baby in the cradle, by another child that is learning to read, and indelibly imprinted on the baby's memory, long before he is capable of pronouncing a single one of them.

For this purpose Pestalozzi wrote his *Book for Mothers*, to which he intended adding a *Book of the Method*, which was to be such that the most inexperienced mother could realise Pestalozzi's plan without adding a word of her own.

Pestalozzi himself recognised later on that these attempts had been rendered superfluous by *Ibid.*, VII, the progress made in psychology, and discontinued their use. He confesses besides, elsewhere, that "all this must be considered as an investigation into mysterious processes of education, on the nature of which he was far from being clear," and that "all these attempts, results of not perfectly matured conceptions, have remained in the condition of unexecuted projects."

(b) *Study of Sounds used in Singing* — As the study of these sounds could not contribute to *Ibid.*, VII, produce clearness of conception, it does not enter into the means of instruction which Pestalozzi is here considering; he consequently postpones giving us his theory on the subject, merely recommending that no new exercise should be begun until the previous one has been thoroughly mastered.

## 2. *Study of Words*

The study of *words*, or rather of *nouns*, will be pursued again at the beginning with the help of the *Book for Mothers*, in which are mentioned in series of kinds and sorts the most essential objects in the world, — those which are connected with natural history, history, and geography with human callings and relations. These series are given to the

child at first as simple reading exercises as soon as he has finished the first reading-book in which he has learnt to read, and gradually he comes to learn them by heart. The profit derived from this study is immense for the future, and singularly facilitates the instruction that follows.

### 3. *Study of Language*

*Aim* — What is the supreme aim of language?

Evidently to lead man from *obscure perceptions* to *distinct conceptions*.  
*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, VII,  
 §§ 20-44.

What are the means to be employed in attaining this aim? The means are threefold:—

1. We recognise an object generally, and name it as *unity*, as *object*.

2. We become gradually conscious of its *characteristics*, and learn to name these.

3. We acquire by *language* the power of more precisely determining these characteristics of the objects, and making ourselves clear as to their variable conditions, by modifications in the words themselves, and by combinations of them.

In order to teach the child to know and to designate the distinctive characteristics of objects, we must teach him:—

1. To express himself clearly on *number* and *form*, which are the most comprehensive general abstractions of physical nature.

2. To express himself clearly on all other *qualities* of objects, both by those which can be perceived by the five senses, and by those which cannot, but which



are recognised by our faculties of imagination and judgment.

*Number* and *form* must not be presented to the child's mind as inherent qualities of single objects, but as a physical generality. He must not only be able at an early age to call a round thing *round*, and a square thing *square*, but he must, if it is possible, almost beforehand have the idea of *round*, of *square*, of *unity*, impressed on his mind as a pure abstract conception, so that he may connect everything which he finds in Nature to be *round*, or *square*, to be *single*, *fourfold*, etc., to the word which expresses the generality of this conception. And here we see, besides, why language, as means of expressing number and form, must be considered by itself, separated from the way in which it must be regarded as means of expressing all other qualities, which our five senses enable us to perceive in the objects of Nature.

The *Book for Mothers* is drawn up in such a manner that all the kinds of physical generalities which are made known to us by our five senses are there put into language, and mothers are thereby enabled to make the most exact expressions for them familiar to the child, without any exertion of their own.

As to qualities not directly perceived by the five senses, which are made known to us by the help of our faculty of *comparison*, of *imagination*, and of *deduction*, Pestalozzi remains true to his principle of making no kind of human judgment seem ripe before it really is, but utilises the inevitable knowledge of such abstract terms in children of this age, as mere memory work, and perhaps, too, as light food for their imagination and their power of guessing. With regard to

objects directly perceived by our five senses, concerning which it is desirable to bring the child as quickly as possible to the power of expressing itself precisely, Pestalozzi proceeds as follows: he takes the substantives which are distinguished by striking characteristics, perceived by us by the help of our five senses, from the dictionary, and puts the adjectives which express these characteristics after them; *e.g.*:—

*Aal* (*eel*) —slippery, worm-shaped, leather-skinned;

*Abend* (*evening*) —peaceful, cheerful, cool, rainy;

*Achse* (*axle*) —strong, weak, greasy;

*Acker* (*field*) —sandy, clayey, sowed, manured, fertile, unproductive.

Then he reverses the proceeding, and looks up in the dictionary adjectives which express striking characteristics of objects which have been perceived by the senses, puts after them substantives which have the peculiar characteristics expressed by the adjectives; *e.g.*:—

round —bullet, hat, moon, sun;

light —feather, down, air;

heavy —gold, lead, oak;

warm —stove, summer days, glow;

high —towers, mountains, giants, trees;

deep —seas, lakes, cellars, trenches;

soft —meat, wax, butter;

elastic —steel springs, whalebone; etc.

Far from preventing the children from thinking for themselves, Pestalozzi asks them to give him other examples, and they sometimes find excellent ones, which would not have occurred to the master.

Thus the sphere of their knowledge is extended, and their knowledge itself made more precise in a

way that would be impossible, or only to be realised with difficulty, by mere *catechising*, or at any rate would only be attainable with the use of far greater art, and with far greater trouble.

*Disadvantage of the Catechetical Method.*—The child is bound down, partly by the limits of the fixed idea on which it is being catechised, partly by the form in which he is catechised, and finally by the limits of the teacher's sphere of knowledge, and moreover by his anxiety not to be thrown off the rails of his artificiality. All these limits fall away in Pestalozzi's method.

*Examples of Application*—Then he tries to make the objects already partially known to the child still more clear by the help of the dictionary. He makes four chief divisions: (1) geography, (2) history, (3) physical geography, (4) natural history.

After that comes the *ego*, and all that concerns man himself:—

1. As a purely physical being in his connection with the animal kingdom.
2. As a social being.
3. As a moral being.

And these are divided again into forty subdivisions.

After having thus worked through the dictionary, Pestalozzi considers how best to classify the objects, the names of which the child has learnt in alphabetical order.

After *alphabetical* order he takes *scientific* order, using numbers for reference.

Thus, in geography, he divides Germany into ten sections, numbers these 1, 2, 3, etc., and adds to the name of each town in his alphabetical list the number

corresponding to the section to which it belongs; *e.g.* Aachen 8, Abenberg 4, Acken 10, etc. The child after some practice will be able to read off:—

*Aachen* is in the Westphalian section.

*Abenberg* is in the Frankish section.

*Acken* is in the Low Saxon section, etc.

Finally, children must be taught to designate precisely by language the relation of the objects one to the other, and their modifications as regards number, time, proportion; or rather, to make still more distinct the nature, qualities, and powers of all objects which they have had brought to their consciousness by the teaching of the names, and which have been made clear to a certain extent by the adding the names of the qualities to the names of the objects.

Such should be the basis of a real *grammar*, and such the progressive course by which we are conducted to the final aim of instruction, *viz. clearness of ideas.*

The first teaching of language must therefore be through *speech* alone, without a word of any rule. The two things, *exercise of pronunciation* and the *learning of words*, must be kept perfectly distinct, and the pupil exercised sufficiently in the first, quite independently of the second. Later on the mother combines the two, and makes the child repeat after her sentences in the following form:—

Who is? What are?

The father is good.

Birds of prey are carnivorous.

Stags are light-footed.

Who has? What has?

The lion has strength.  
 Man has reason.  
 The dog has a good nose.  
 The elephant has a proboscis.

Who wants? What wants?

The hungry man wants to eat.  
 The creditor wants to be paid.  
 The prisoner wants to be set free.

And so on with *who can? who ought? who must?* etc., finally with other verbs and their derivatives, *achten, verachten, erachten, beobachten*, etc.

Pestalozzi afterwards makes phrases which become more and more lengthy on the same verb; *e.g.* :—

I shall.

I shall retain.

I shall not retain my health otherwise.

I shall not retain my health after all I have suffered in my illness otherwise.

I shall not retain my health, after all I have suffered in my illness, otherwise than by practising the greatest temperance.

These exercises are accompanied by descriptions and definitions of objects or simple actions; *e.g.* :—

A *bell* is a broad, thick, round cup open at the bottom, etc.

*Walking* is moving oneself forward step by step, etc.<sup>1</sup>

And the same series of phrases is conjugated in all tenses and in all persons.

<sup>1</sup> Pestalozzi during his stay at Burgdorf drew up a grammar according to his principles, of which Seyffarth has published some fragments under the title, *The Natural Schoolmaster, Der natürliche Schulmeister*, Vol. XVI of the Complete Works.

The examples should be of an instructive character, appropriate to the circumstances of the children, and calculated to inspire edifying sentiments.

*Importance of Language. Novelty of the Method—*  
*Wie Gertrud Pestalozzi dwells on the importance of lan-*  
*ihre Kinder guage, which he says he has utilised more*  
*lehrt, VII, than has hitherto been the case, as a means*  
 §§ 46-49. *of gaining clearness of conception.*

The child must learn to talk before one can talk with him. The mistake made by older methods was that of assuming a knowledge of language in the child, before it has been imparted to him.

*Language* is an incommensurable art, or rather the sum of all the arts which our race has attained. It gives the child, in a few moments, what Nature has needed thousands of years to give to men. The ignorance of the lower classes, who cannot be made to understand anything, is due to the fact that they are not taught to speak.

*Language* is considered in the abstract, in its most  
*Idee* general pedagogic sense, the sum of man's  
*der Elem.,* intellectual consciousness of himself and  
 §§ 34, 35. *Nature.*

As every human activity is inseparable from consciousness, and necessarily reveals itself as human consciousness, so *speech* is inseparable from all human study.

Just as the child cannot become distinctly conscious of its *perceptions* and impressions of Nature without *language*, so he cannot be led, without it, to the recognition of the first elements of *form* and *number*.

It is clear that the course by which *language* can

humanly develop the child's mind must be the same as that by which *number* and *form* do so. The child must then learn to *speak* as it has learned to *think*.

*Development of Language in the Child*—The word of the mother is no mere animal sound to the child even in the very beginning. Even if he cannot yet distinguish the word he hears from her mouth from other sounds, nevertheless it appeals to him in human fashion. The word of his loving mother is a loving, laughing babble, like his own. He sees in it already love, tender solicitude, guidance, and seriousness.

The utterance of his sensual needs soon no longer contents him. He cries less, and babbles more. Now he wants to imitate the mother's babble, her loving tone and her serious tone. The consciousness of the mother's words is no longer the consciousness of an empty sound; the first consciousness of both language and the power of speech has developed in him. His desire of being able to speak becomes more lively. It is still difficult, but he exerts himself, he will speak, he succeeds in getting out a word. The mother is delighted, she hugs her baby, who can *talk*. He seems to her a new apparition, a newly created child. He seems to her a more human being. The child's sense of power is quickened, both by the consciousness of his success and by his mother's love. He talks more and more, and the mother exerts herself more and more, in her blissful consciousness of joy and love, to satisfy and quicken the child's eagerness to talk. The intellectual *ego* of the child is organised. His inner consciousness of himself awakes, with the word *I*, which he speaks for the first time, and with the sublime expression *I am*, he has gained himself, and with

himself an eternally fixed centre of all perception and experience of the world. This *I*, a mirror of the world, which connects him at once, eternally and infinitely, to the world, and to the objects in it, becomes in its turn the general point of starting of the elementary study of language, the centre of which has been fixed in the idea of the *Book for Mothers*.

*The Study of Language. Its Point of Starting and its Aim* — The development of the *faculty of language* is connected with the natural development of the faculty of *sense-perception*. Both take life as their point of starting. From the moment that one begins to put empty words in the child's mouth, and imprint them on his memory, as if they were knowledge of things, or the means of learning the knowledge of things, one departs from the principle, "*Life educates*." One thereby only conducts the child to error, presumption, and superficiality. On the other hand, if we follow this principle exactly, the teaching of language becomes a means of application of the knowledge gained by *sense-perception*, and its task consists in gaining for this a higher degree of usefulness.

The study of language, therefore, with every single child, depends on the extent and precision of the knowledge, gained by *sense-perception*, which he possesses, and the teacher must above all seek to fill up the gaps which may exist in this respect.

The art of naturally extending and quickening the impressions made by *sense-perception* is the only true foundation of all means of the naturally furthering the learning of the mother tongue. The outward



forms of speech, the sounds themselves, are without living connection with the impressions which form the basis of their signification, are mere empty sounds. It is only by the consciousness of their connection with the impressions of the objects of *sense-perception* that they become true human words.

The initial preparation for this, what the child hears spoken by those around him, is for a long time purely mechanical; but this mechanical preparation for learning to speak demands the whole attention of the persons who have influence on it. The words which the infant hears from those around him only gradually become intellectually educative. For a long time they only make a sensual impression on his hearing, like the ringing of bells, the blow of a hammer, the sounds made by animals, and other sounds of Nature. But this impression is important in the learning to speak. The impression on the sense of hearing gradually becomes full and complete. As soon as it becomes complete in the sense of hearing, it passes gradually into the power of the mouth to imitate it in speaking. The child learns at this tender age to pronounce a number of word-sounds, the sense of which it does not know; but it is thereby prepared to comprehend this sense with infinitely greater facility and more lastingly, than it would if mouth and ear were not already familiar with the words.

*Elementary education* does not, however, content itself with utilising the impressions which Nature brings accidentally and in confused conglomeration to the child's senses, in the development of his faculty of speech, merely just as they come and present them-

selves ; it extends its influence to arranging them in the true order, according to the extent of the real needs of human nature, and to bringing its utilisation into harmony with those needs. And it must do so. For as it is necessary and good for the development of the child's *faculty of sense-perception*, that the circle of the objects of his *sense-perception* in his surroundings be comprehensive, and satisfy the needs of the development of all knowledge that is essential to and necessary for him, without, however, going beyond the needs of his state of life and his capabilities ; just so it is necessary, that the circle of the *knowledge of language*, in the limits of which the child is to learn to speak, must be comprehensive, and satisfy the needs of his state of life and his capabilities : but not beyond ; otherwise, in both cases, the acquisition of the necessary and essential conceptions becomes retarded, weakened, scattered, and confused. This point of view is equally true, and equally important, in the means of development and education of all the human faculties. Even with the poorest child, the child whose position and circumstances are most limited, one can never carry too far the *real* and *solid* development of the essential faculties, by *natural* and *elementary* means ; he can never become by these means too willing, too reasonable, too active, or too industrious.

The study of language in the abstract, and at the commencement, is not the task of the education of the mind, but consists in *talking* and *hearing* people *talk*.

*Part played by Grammar. Criticism of Methods employed in the Study of Language* — The knowledge of rules of grammar is nothing else but a touchstone, used

to see whether the natural means of *talking* and of *hearing others talk* have attained their aim. These rules ought to come at the end of a rightly ordered study of language, and not at the *beginning*.

But in teaching languages other than the mother tongue, people have long set up an unnatural division between knowing how to talk in a language, and knowing the language itself, the intellectual part of which must be prepared for and facilitated to the child, by the mechanical means of ordinary speech, and in a manner so as to make him have a dawning consciousness of it before he is brought by the study of rules to have a clear consciousness of it. People sometimes admit the truth of this assertion as regards modern languages; they admit it because they cannot help themselves; but they contest it most emphatically with regard to dead languages, alleging that the teaching of the classics, in spite of its lack of continuity, and the very faulty character of the routine methods of the rudiments, has had excellent results, and in the more advanced stage is really built on a firm and psychological foundation. But although this last is a fact, it nevertheless is true, that, as a rule, the earlier stages of classical teaching cannot be considered either natural or satisfactory, either from a psychological or from a mnemonic point of view. In other words, the present routine treatment of the teaching of the rudiments of the classics is unnatural, both from a psychological and from a mnemonic point of view.

The study of *language* constitutes the connecting link between the *faculty of sense-perception* and that of the *faculty of thought*. Without it the teaching of *number* and *form* is helpless.

The three faculties, *perception*, *language*, and *thought*, are the sum of the means of intellectual education.

It is of the greatest importance that the child be not led to thoughtless chattering or even to a desire of *Schwanen-* it, by the way he is taught to talk. He *gesang*, § 54. must learn never to speak without due reflection and consideration; in this way exercise in speaking is made inseparable from exercise in thinking and reflecting.

Now it is an undeniable fact, that the child brought up according to the method of the *elementary education* does not indulge in thoughtless chatter; *Ibid.*, § 59. he does not talk until he knows what he has to say, and then he only talks of what he has in some manner or another perceived by his senses.

It is wrong to make children read before they know how to talk. People want to make them talk by the help of books; they tear them away by force, they use artifice to get them away from *sense-perception*, this natural basis of language, and make, in the most unnatural manner possible, dead letters the beginning of knowledge of things. . . . The child must be able to speak correctly and precisely about many things, long before he is ripe to reasonably read any book whatsoever.

*Relations of Language to Sense-perception and Thought* — *The faculty of sense-perception* can be only *Ibid.*, §§ 61, 62, 91, fully developed by the practice of *sense-perception*, and has only attained the perfection of development when the individual can utilise, freely and surely, with full and clear consciousness, the *perceptive* impressions of his surround-

ings as the sure foundations of his *thought* and *judgment* on these surroundings. But this perfection can only be attained on condition that there be no gap in the continuity between the faculty of *sense-perception* and the faculty of *judgment*; *i.e.* when the pupil has been made capable of expressing in language his *perceptive* impressions of surrounding objects with as much clearness and precision as he has realised them by his senses. Until the pupil has reached this stage in the mastery of *language*, there is a gap of continuity between the development of his faculty of *sense-perception* and that of his faculty of *thought*, which cannot be otherwise filled than by a sufficiently developed *faculty of language*.

Such is the essence of the task of the teaching of *language*, if it is conceived in a psychological manner, and based on true psychological principles.

*Study of Foreign Languages*—The natural course of the study of foreign languages must be in perfect harmony with that of the study of the mother tongue. *Ibid.*, § 66.

*How the Child learns his Mother Tongue*—The absolute point of starting for a child in learning its mother tongue is the impression of objects on his senses, the names of which have been made familiar to his ear and mouth. To this perception of the objects, and pronouncing of their names, is slowly but surely added the recognition and utterance of the names of the inherent qualities of the objects, and also of the impressions they make; in other words, of the adjectives and verbs which are appropriate to the names of the objects. The progress of this learning

to speak from the names of the objects (nouns), to the words which express their qualities (adjectives), and from those which express the impressions made by them (verbs), is by no means a sequence in time. The average child at home does not hear the objects named, adjectives to correspond added, and finally verbs, all in sequence of time, or even in any order whatsoever. He learns them all in intimate connection in phrases, which give him first a glimmer of understanding, and then a comprehension which becomes clearer and clearer, of the meaning of single words, and the nature of their connection, in all he hears and speaks. The advantage of this in the development of the power of language is obvious. Every single word in a sentence helps to explain the others, by reason of the connection of the conceptions expressed. That is why a sentence is generally more easily retained by the memory than a single, isolated word, which has no natural connection with any others. The sense of a word in every sentence acquires by its connection with the other words in the sentence, a definite, although a one-sided and limited, foundation to its general meaning.

By the *elementary method*, the child not only acquires a solid, even if yet not quite clear, consciousness of every part of speech, but also practises, and makes himself perfectly familiar with, every form of the declensions of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and of the conjugations of verbs, *i.e.* of the modifications of the declinable parts of speech. As to the invariable parts of speech, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and exclamations, their use may also be taught by psychologically arranged series of examples,

and facilitated to a degree which Nature unaided could not attain. All the time that the child is being put through these exercises, he does not hear a word about grammar or syntax. By this means the child comes to possess, as an imperishable treasure, the whole extent of all the expressions it needs to clothe its sense-perceptions in *language*, and is able to express himself in his mother tongue on a great many perceptions, with the greatest precision and fluency, without there being any necessity, all the time that he is learning to speak, of his learning any of the principles or rules of language, or of committing a single word to memory.

However, the principle that every process in teaching a new language must be perfectly similar, and essentially the same, as those employed in teaching a child his mother tongue,—this principle, I say, has been lost sight of at the present time, chiefly owing to the refinement of the artificial means by which the first steps in learning a new language are made confused and difficult. And yet it is deeply engraved in the *bon sens* of human nature. Experience has proved, beyond the possibility of a doubt, that the more natural persons, persons not spoilt by artificial training, devote themselves to teaching children a new language, the greater is the success which crowns their efforts. And Pestalozzi quotes in support of this assertion the foreign maids engaged to teach their language to children, who succeed just because they follow the natural method. He also mentions the case of foreigners who come to a country without knowing the language, and are obliged to learn the language by the natural method; and reminds us of the proverb, *Necessity is the best master*.

### B. *Form and Number*

Pestalozzi's somewhat confused treatment of *form* and *number* has no other interest than that of the means of application which resulted from it. These are summed up in what he calls *The A B C of Sense-perception*.  
*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, VIII, §§ 1-10.

*Number* is, in Pestalozzi's eyes, the greatest of the elements of our knowledge; for the following reasons:—

Unlike *sound* and *form*, arithmetic is the only means of instruction which has no subordinate means connected with it, because it is the direct result of the elementary faculty by which we bring clearly to our consciousness the relation of *more* and *less* in all sense-perceptions.

*Sound* and *form* often contain the germ of error, *number* never; number alone leads to infallible results; and if geometry makes the same claim, it has only infallible results through the aid of and by its combination with arithmetic.

It is the means of elementary instruction which most surely attains its end, and for this reason it is the most important. That is why Pestalozzi devoted most attention to it.

Before expounding his theory on the use he makes of sense-perception in the study of the relations of number, he demonstrates the futility of knowledge gained by the mere use of the memory (*e.g.*  $3 + 4 = 7$ . If we only commit to memory the fact that three and four make seven, the inner truth of this *seven* is not in us). Similarly for all other categories of knowledge.



Pestalozzi begins his teaching of arithmetic by giving the children the conception of the numbers from one to ten, by the help of actual objects, or lines and dots on tables. Not until they have been well exercised in the counting of these objects (fingers, peas, pebbles, etc.), does he proceed to figures, the signs of the abbreviations of numbers, and these figures the children now find quite easy. He sees in this method of proceeding two advantages, (1) arithmetic becomes the basis of distinct conceptions, (2) it is extremely facilitated to the child, because it is based on *sense-perception*. If arithmetic seems difficult to them at the beginning, it is only because this psychologically necessary treatment of arithmetic is not applied in its full extent.

In order now to give the child clear ideas based on *sense-perception* with regard to measure, it was necessary to find a figure capable of being divided into an infinite number of parts, similar to the whole and to one another, a figure by which fractions gained by division may be brought to the child's perception in such a manner that every relation of a fraction to the whole may stand as clear and distinct before the child's eyes, as the number one is in the child's eyes distinctly contained three times in the number three.

The only figure which fulfils these conditions is the *square*, the fractions of which are as easy to understand as the whole.

Thus Pestalozzi came to set up the *ABC of sense-perception*, of which the basis is the *square*, and which thus becomes the *ABC of arithmetic*; and realises thereby the harmony of the elementary means of *form* and *number*, for the figures of geometry become the

first fundamental elements in the relations of numbers, and conversely, the fundamental elements of the relations of numbers become the first elements of the figures of geometry.

The *ABC of sense-perception* will then comprise two parts: —

1. The *ABC of sense-perception* of the relations of measure.

2. The *ABC of sense-perception* of the relations of number.<sup>1</sup>

The first of these *ABC's* has as its fundamental principle the square, first as the whole, then divided into 2, 3 ... 10 parts. All these squares are arranged on a table similar to the table of Pythagoras.

The *ABC of the relations of number* has likewise a table as basis. On it lines are drawn to represent series of unities by 1, 2, 3 ... 10, and repeated ten times.

The mere looking at the table suffices to give the child the immediate perception of the most varied measures, and enables him to solve complicated problems on fractions.

*Drawing* — The teaching of drawing, not being possible without the perception of proportion, must necessarily be preceded by preliminary exercises.

*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt*, VII, § 80.

*Important Result of this Method* — The first result of this method is that children learn to express them-

<sup>1</sup> *ABC der Anschauung oder Anschauungslehre der Massverhältnisse — Anschauungslehre der Zahlverhältnisse*, 2 Bde., Zürich und Tübingen, 1803.

selves with precision, both orally and in writing, on all possible objects with which they are acquainted, on condition, of course, that the exercise of *Schwanen-writing* be added to the others. Finally, *gesang*, § 70. Pestalozzi declares that by using the method three or four years are saved. And yet, at the end of his life, he confessed his mistake in wanting to use the square as a *Deus ex machina*, and in taking inanimate objects as the basis of these exercises.<sup>1</sup>

Pestalozzi has such a firm belief in the efficacy of these processes that he repeats what he had already said in the preface to the *Book for Mothers*. Friends and enemies of the method, try it with this model, and adopt or reject it according as it gives results or not.

<sup>1</sup> It will be remembered that Herbart applied Pestalozzi's idea, only substituting the triangle for the square.

## CHAPTER VI

### MORAL AND RELIGIOUS EDUCATION

Definition of Religion. — The divine nature of man. — Christianity and elementary education. — The first moral and religious education of the child. — First period. — Second period. — Third period. — Birth of the child to moral life. — On the idea of God: The foundation of morality is faith and not ideas. — Religious instructions. — Part played by the mother. — Part played by the father. — Conformity of elementary education to Christianity.

*Definition of Religion* — Religion is nothing else than the endeavour of the spirit to keep  
*Lienhard u. Gertrud,* flesh and blood in order by attachment to  
III, § 85. the Creator of our being.<sup>1</sup>

*The Divine Nature of Man* — The nature of man is of God, it is a godlike nature. That is why the inter-  
*Idee der Elem.,* vention of the world and its passions does  
§ 66. not educate man's innocence harmoniously  
with the high and holy essence of his nature. It does not educate him elementarily, it does

<sup>1</sup> For Pestalozzi's religious and social opinions, see his curious book entitled *Meine Nachforschungen über den Gang der Natur in der Entwicklungen des Menschengeschlechtes*, 1797, re-edited in 1886 by Mr. O. Hunziker, who has added to it a very interesting essay. We have not considered it necessary to give extracts from it in a purely pedagogical work.

not even educate him humanly. The human element in our nature is only truly developed by the godlike element in it.

*Christianity and Elementary Education* — The most important event in the course of the moral development of the human race is Christianity. *Ibid.*, §§ 47-50.

If we examine Christianity from the point of view of the idea of *elementary education*, we find in it, as the divine means of educating the human race to morality, all that was claimed to be the contents and the task of that idea, expounded with the most transparent lucidity and appavelled in celestial light, for it is the divine means of educating the human race to morality. And we can regard the demands and principles of elementary education as just so many demands and principles of Christianity, only in the latter they appear much more sublime than we can represent them. The Founder of Christianity invariably compares the foundation of his kingdom to the course of organic development followed by Nature. In assuming freedom of will in every individual, he also assumed in him the very essence of morality. He has besides actually put freedom of will, from the point of view of the intellect, in the *truth* which emanates from God, and of which God is the archetype; from the point of view of sentiment, in the *love* which also emanates from God, and of which God is the archetype; from the physical point of view, in the putting truth and love into *action*, which action also is of God, and God is the archetype thereof. He presents the harmony and unity of this *truth*, this *love*, and this *action* in human morality as the highest

aim of man, as his true essence, as perfection. We ought to be perfect, as our Father which is in heaven.

The road to this perfection is through obedience in absolute submission to the will of God, the practice of virtue, self-denial, annihilation of the personality. But this self-denial, this annihilation of the personality, is nothing else than the life of the godlike idea in us, the moral, the eternal life.

Thus Jesus founded the work of morality on the divine dignity of the human nature in the child.

Are the means we have already pointed out for intellectual *elementary education* in harmony with the recognised general basis of all elementary education, *i.e.* with Christianity?

*Idee der  
Elem., §§ 56,  
57.*

Certainly; for *elementary education*, like Christianity itself, is not the privilege of a few fortunate persons and cannot be taken away from the poor and those of low degree. Nothing can hinder them from attaining the highest degree of development of those faculties and talents which their Heavenly Father has given them.

Whatever may be the gifts of the Creator, the good man feels that they are always worthy of his attention and of his cultivation. Wherever he may find them he recognises them as a kind of higher divine property. Yes! says the low and selfish man, property must be esteemed, protected, and cultivated, in whosoever hands it may be, otherwise the land would go to rack and ruin. Poor man, you are certainly right; but God's higher gifts are the higher property of man, and man must esteem, protect, and cultivate them, in whosoever hands they may be, otherwise humanity will go to rack and ruin.

Human nature is of God, it is a godlike nature. The human element in our nature can therefore only be truly developed by the godlike element which is contained in it. The world and its lusts cannot develop it humanly. *Ibid.*, § 66.

As the *elementary method* recognises Christianity in its Founder as the absolute and perfect revelation of the moral nature of man, just so it recognises this same Christianity in its Founder as the absolute and perfect revelation of the religious nature of man, and therein the redemption and the Redeemer of the world. The part which religion plays as universal means of educating humanity is seen through him in the greatest clearness and might. Thereby Christianity is not only raised to the position of the unchanging and eternal touchstone of every religious appearance, but also in it are given the elements and the course of all religious development and education. *Ibid.*, § 85.

If we investigate these elements and this course of the religious development of Christianity, we find in it, with regard to religion in the abstract, *i.e.* from the objective point of view, as the absolute alpha and omega, *God*, *i.e.* the idea of the Godhead; with regard to religion in man, *i.e.* from the subjective point of view, the *godlike*, *i.e.* the spirit of God, the divine idea indwelling in man, through which alone he becomes an image of God and accessible to all religion. Finally, with regard to the point of view which is at the same time subjective and objective, Jesus Christ, as the Divinity appearing in the flesh and as the perfect divine man.

*The First Moral and Religious Education of the*

*Child* — The moral education of the child begins at his birth with his first needs. It may be divided into three periods.

*Idee der  
Elem., §§  
248-270.*

*First Period* — The child feels a want; the mother has what he wants; she gives him what he wants; she is his world, he recognises it only through her, and it satisfies him only through her. He is hungry, she satisfies his hunger; he is now happy. The place where he is lying is not comfortable, she takes him on her arm; he is now happy. The two things, to be happy and to be with his mother, are woven into one and the same idea with him. The expressions of happiness, the expressions of content, gradually develop in him; he is not only content, he smiles; he is pleased because he has been satisfied. He recognises the fountain of his content, he loves her, the signs of his joy and his love develop; he throws his arms round his mother's neck and caresses her. These signs multiply, they become more definite; their essence is now transformed in his soul into lasting consciousness, into lasting recognition. He now trusts his mother, is quiet even when she is not there, he knows she will come back; he trusts in her order, he accustoms himself to her. His love expands in this calm, in this satisfaction. The character of his love is altered, he wants now to make his love active; he wants his mother to see it; he wants her to see that he is happy, that she has made him happy; he wants her to be happy because of his love, and this love of his gradually develops in him the noble sentiment of gratitude.

But the child's moral nature at this period develops, not through insight, but through enjoyment; he is by no



means in search of truth, but of satisfaction. The first result of his experience, of his development, as it is expressed in the liveliness of his whole being, is therefore by no means the clearness of an idea of something that he recognises, not even mere simple foundation that leads to it; it is only developed love, developed trust; it is only traces of gratitude for what he has received.

*Second Period*—The child thus gradually approaches his second period, the *extension of his love and trust beyond his mother*. But this extension again is only developed, at this period, through the mother herself. She leads him to all sorts of objects which she sees have attractions for him; and when she leads him to a gaily coloured dress, or to a beautiful flower, to the bell that is ringing, or to a dog that is barking, etc.; when she makes him smell a rose, or a violet, or lets him feel the warmth of the stove; when she lets him taste the sweet pear and honey; in short, whatever she may do to him and with him, *she gives him words for all*; she names to him the objects of his needs and of his surroundings, as they come in contact with his senses, as they attract, quicken, and satisfy his mind. And she does not give him mere empty words, she gives him them according to the measure that the things she names to him are needful for him, make him happy, cause him pleasure, or prevent disagreeable sensations. *Her teaching of language is always connected with lively action, which again is in connection with the objects, the names of which she pronounces to the child*; she holds his hand away from the flame, when she says, "*Fire burns*"; she pulls him energetically away from the river bank, when she says, "*You could*

*fall in and be drowned."* Everything she says to the child is, in her mouth, teaching of truth for the child. She develops and strengthens the consciousness of the words by her loving action.

From her the child learns to talk for the sake of the objects, and not to get to know things, in order to be able to talk about them. Speech is for him only expression upon things he knows, and the thing never the mere appendix of the words which it has taught him. Therefore it follows, as a matter of course, the more perfectly a child thus brought up understands a thing, the more he talks about it; and the less he understands, the less he talks. Therefore the development of his faculties and powers generally takes place in consequence of the truth of actual life. He does not strengthen his hand just to strengthen his hand, but exerts his strength in every case to satisfy the necessity of the special circumstance. He develops the skill and strength of his hand, because he uses it, and does not use it in order thereby to gain skill and strength. He does not walk in order to strengthen the muscles of his foot, but strengthens these muscles because he walks, and he walks because he wants to and because he cannot help himself.

If in the first period of the mother's influence, the development of the child's faculties has been furthered merely by the simple satisfaction of his powers, *her influence awakens, in the second period, the consciousness of the truth of himself in the child, and the truth of his immediate surroundings, as well as the relation of the one to the other.* He now becomes conscious of his senses, which grow more and more acute, of his power, which becomes stronger and stronger. He knows what he

can do, and is dimly conscious of the next step, which is easy to be attained. He wants to be able to take that step, to do a little more than he now can; he tries to do it. His appreciation of his own capability and of his surroundings grows daily; he feels daily less fear, and trusts his surroundings more and more; but this progress is still only made at the mother's side, and in the security of her brooding protection. He has not the smallest confidence in himself, if he is not at her side; he never feels so happy as in her room; he is still completely satisfied with playing in her room, although this play in its limitedness only moderately delights his mind and body. He ventures, yet still very cautiously, outside the door, and creeps slowly away from her, often looking back as he goes, into the garden near, sits down on the grass, draws a deep breath in the wide expanse of Nature, picks flowers, or collects pebbles, snails, and flowers. But if he hears a loud noise, if he sees anybody strange in his neighbourhood, he creeps quietly and timidly back to the safe haven of his protecting mother. She and she alone is the point of starting of his confidence at this period.

However, as soon as he becomes better acquainted with his surroundings, he begins to feel safer away from his mother. He gradually starts less at rustling leaves, or a passing stranger; he entices the dog or sheep he is familiar with to his side with a bit of his bread, even when his mother is not by; soon he ventures to the end of the garden, looks through the hedge into the street, has now confidence in the hedge, as he had confidence in the house door, and enjoys the sight of the passers-by, even if he never saw them before.

The less he has seen of them, the more fixedly he looks at them; he is now glad, if they stand still in front of him; if he is safe behind the hedge, he looks calmly at the big horse, when it crops the grass close to him; and if people close to him, but outside the hedge, talk in a loud tone of voice, he no longer runs away; he looks at them more fixedly. His desire to see more people, more things, grows stronger and stronger; impelled by it, he ventures to creep under the garden gate into the street, to see and hear better what is happening outside.

*Third Period*—Thus he passes gradually into the third stage of his childish development. *He now feels the increasing security which his growing knowledge and his growing powers give him, even away from his mother, and from the protection of her love.* He has daily more confidence in himself, and he knows better every day what objects he can trust and what he cannot. He knows better every day how to help himself and protect himself. And he must know; the powers which develop in him contain, inherent, an incitement to try to put them into action. His power is unsatisfied if he has no occasion, no inducement, to use it. He feels that; he must and will exert it, whenever he can. He wants to be able to do more. The living room becomes too narrow for him to gratify this want. Even his mother is no longer everything to him, she is no longer all his world. He now recognises a world beyond her. He is no longer happy to be always at her side. The idea "to be happy" and "to be by his mother" is no longer one and the same. He is happy away from her. He springs away from her to boys at play; he does not notice if there are any among them he has not seen

before; he plays with them as if he knew them, he is happy among them; he goes back to them on the morrow, and the day after that to play with them; he enters into friendship with them, he brings them home, saying, *Father and Mother ! look, I have got some friends.* And they take him to their fathers, and their mothers, and say to them, *He is our friend.* The horizon of his life, the horizon of his experiences, is extended.

Now *his faculties develop by the side of his mates in the life of the world, as they developed at his mother's side in the life of the house.* His mother taught him to walk, the boys teach him to run and jump and climb. His mother taught him to speak, the boys teach him to sing and whistle and shout. His mother made him take hold, fetch and carry what she or he needed; the boys make him take hold, and carry, and catch, and throw things that he likes to carry and throw, also heavy things which make him put out his strength. He now becomes stronger and stronger, stronger in mind, as well as in body. He looks more boldly at the world around him; his heart expands; the world he loves, the world he has confidence in, now acts on the extension of his mental ability and of his physical powers. This becomes a greater and more general need in every respect.

He feels this need, is impelled by it; *he gradually begins to long for all the knowledge, power, and possession of the world.* It is now as if the spirit of his childish guidance, as if all feeling of his childish feebleness, and the insecurity, fear, and doubt resulting from it, had come to a standstill; it is as if the bond which connected him and his mother, as a holy

commencement of his whole development, were ready to fall away; as if he were now ready to enter the world, without protection and without guide. But can he? Can the shy, cautious walk of infancy, of his first development, cease so suddenly? May the protecting and developing bond between him and his mother be torn asunder, before a new protecting and developing bond be tied between him and Nature? Is the child to come to a standstill now in the centre of his pure, elevating essence and being? Ought his mother, may his mother, let him leave her without anxiety? Does he no longer need her, does he no longer need a guide to lead him in her spirit? Must she now give free play to his awakening desire to snatch unhindered at all knowledge, power, and desire of the world, without any regard to the former spirit of her action?

Here Pestalozzi describes in touching terms the anguish of the mother, who naturally asks what is to become of her child. He, too, recognises that the child is in serious danger of losing the innocence and the purity which the protection of his mother preserved in him; for *he is obviously only incited to the demands for knowledge, power, and will, which he makes, by his mere animal nature, and not humanly elevated to desire them.*

Finally he loses his innocence, and falls of his own free will into sin; his animal instinct, stronger than his good feeling, leads him into evil. He has learnt to know what is wrong, and yet he does wrong. As he formerly had an instinctive fear of what was unknown and strange, and this fear was his salvation against the dangers which unknown things might cause him,

so he ought now to be afraid of what is wrong, and be saved by this fear from the evils which wrong-doing could cause him. And as in the dangers of his physical infancy he needed the belief in his mother's protection and love to save him, so now *he needs*, in the dangers of his moral and intellectual infancy, *a new belief to save him from the evil*, which he now has learnt to know, and to educate him in well-doing. He now needs more than ever the secured continuance of the loving, trusting, and elevating frame of mind in which the first germs of his education developed in such holy and awe-inspiring fashion. And the lack of the continuance of this frame of mind in the awakening of his energies is incontestably the rock on which the child must strike, if there be no hand to protect and guide him in these first steps of his intellectual and moral development, just as he would have come to grief, in the first stage of his physical development, but for the guidance and protection of his mother.

*Birth of the Child to Moral Life. First Religious Education* — The moral nature of the child is now at its birth. The moment is decisive for his whole life, and the danger great.

How are the moral habits which his moral development demand to be given to the child in conformity with Nature? Nature demands at this stage from human care the continuance of what she has hitherto done by instinct; she demands the humanly reasonable continuation of the loving, believing frame of mind, the truth and blessing of which the child has until now unconsciously enjoyed in innocence. The foundation of this condition, the belief in his mother, weakens and totters. Nature demands new means of

belief. Now the child may not step forth from the stage of his sensual and instinctive, inherent belief in his mother, if he is not to run the risk of completely breaking the natural thread of his moral development, *unless the first foundation of the belief in God has already been deeply laid in his soul.*

This must be laid, however, at this stage by *sensible* means. But it is necessary that it should be laid. Nature demands that before the sensual incitement to belief in his mother is weakened in the child, the sensual incitement of belief in God must already be developed in him. In this sensible fusion of the elements of the belief in God in the truth and power of the ripened belief in his mother, lies the only possibility of the pure, continuous, natural continuation of the pure, childish frame of mind, from which human morality, holy and awe-inspiring, springs. In it lies the only possibility of the elevation of the material attachment to a moral and spiritual one; otherwise the holy bond which Nature has made between the infancy and the growth of our humanity is broken, and the great work of Nature which, mighty in love, paved the child's road to the highest elevation of his soul by faith, is in vain.

*The preservation of this great work of Nature in its purity and its might* is the essential foundation of the idea of *elementary education*, and of its claims to being in conformity with Nature. It attains to this conformity by confining art to the path of Nature. It will proceed then at this first stage of education by *sensible* means.

That is why it is essential to the child's moral education that *the sensible impression of his parents' belief* ~~X~~



in God be interwoven with the first perceptions of all the actions of his parents. It is good for him to see them daily pray at the appointed time, just as he sees them bring him his dinner and supper every day at the same time. It is good for him to recognise early their fear of God, their anxiety to do nothing against His will, just as he recognises their respect for strangers or superiors, and their anxiety to do nothing to displease them. It is good for him to hear them speak as much of Jesus Christ, his good life and his sublime death, as they do of the good life and pious death of their father. It is good for him often to see the picture of gentle Jesus, for his mother to show it him, as often as she shows him her father's picture, and thereby awaken his love; it is good that the Lord's Day should seem to him even in his infancy a solemn day, consecrated to God; for church bells, the singing of hymns, Sunday quiet, to make a deep impression on the child's mind in his infancy, and thus sensibly create a deep reverence for God; it is good for him not to take a spoon in his hand, not to begin to eat, until he has clasped his hands and asked a blessing; not to go to bed without repeating his "*Gentle Jesus, meek and mild,*" and not to get up in the morning without praying God to bless father and mother. It is good for him to believe in eternity, before he knows what time means, and to fear at an early age eternal punishment, as he fears his mother's rod. Oh yes! when her child is on the bank of a stream, and there is a dangerous plank from which he could fall and be drowned, she says, "*Do not cross!*" And if he, nevertheless, does cross it, and she sees him, she runs up to the plank, pale and trembling, pulls him off it, and says again, "*Oh dear!*"

oh dear! do not go on that plank, you might drown yourself!" and when he comes in, she shows him the rod, saying, "If you go back, I shall whip you." If, in spite of that, he does go back to the plank, she whips him, and then he never goes there again, but he loves her as much as before.

*On the Idea of God — The Foundation of Morality is Faith and not Ideas* — Pestalozzi refutes Rousseau's statement, that *God ought not to be mentioned to children, until they can comprehend that there is a God, and that He exists.* Are we then to say nothing to the child of his deceased grandfather, in whose house he lives, whose heir his father is, and whose footprints he sees wherever he looks? Will his father and mother wait, before speaking to him of his grandfather, until he knows how human generations succeed one another, and until he understands how his father could not be there, if his grandfather had not existed before him? How absurd! And is the absurdity less in wanting not to speak of God to a child, until he is able to understand by his intellect that there is a God, and that he would not exist if there were no God?

The elements of morality do not start from *ideas*, but from *faith*, and *faith* in its turn starts from facts as ideas; thus *moral elementary education* has in this respect the same foundation as *intellectual elementary education*.

It is through the mother that the child learns to know God, she shows Him to the child in everything she teaches him. Gradually his love of and gratitude to her raise him to God.

*Wie Gertrud ihre Kinder lehrt, XIV, § 7.*

*Religious Instruction*

Religious teaching, to be truly human, must be given in deeds, not words.

Pestalozzi regrets the mere verbal religious teaching, which he ironically calls "*lip-religion*"; he would have nothing learnt by heart, except, perhaps, a few chosen texts, but no theology.

*Lienhard u.  
Gertrud,  
III, § 69.*

Religious teaching ought to be entirely restricted to such as is connected with the acts and circumstances of daily life, of professional duties, so that, when, speaking of God or of eternity to the children, the minister will seem to be speaking of their father, of their house, of their country, in a word, of things which have an interest for them in this world.

The Bible does not demand a knowledge of religion, but the practice of religion from men. Every attempt to explain religion only brings people farther away from their simplic-

ity of spirit. It is not a question of exciting religious enthusiasm by words, nor by any images whatsoever which claim to explain to them what is in heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or in the water under the earth, but to awake a state of mind in harmony with the practice of religious duties.

Temporal and earthly things have been since the creation of the world the truest, surest, and least deceptive foundation of true religion for the people. The briars and thorns which the Lord made to grow on earth are to-day, as they were six thousand years ago, what best taught men to know God; that is why he must be especially educated for earthly things.

But it is impossible to alter the routine of the

clergy, and give them firm, clear, and practical ideas on this point. Their position and their culture lead them too much to turn away their attention from the force which they ought to develop in the soul of the people for earthly things, if they are not to be neglected in the first needs of life, on the satisfaction of which everything else is based.

*Part played by the Mother*—Just as the first proceeding of the simple, intelligent mother is the type of the intellectual education, and that of the pure, innocent, moral mother the type of the moral education, so the first proceeding of the religious mother is the type of the religious education of the child. Her child is a holy gift, a gift of God. She starts from no conception, no proof, and no explanation when she leads him to God. She rather transfuses her sense, her feeling of God, her holy belief in Him, as her highest, her absolutely certain, possession, directly into the child's soul as by a divine breath.

The mother breathes religion into everything around her, she sees God in all. The glory and majesty of Nature, her beauty and order, her wondrous appearances, fill her soul with thoughts of God, and she speaks of Him to her child. Thus the child has a visionary gleam of Him, a dawning of a recognition of Him as the almighty and invisible Creator, as the kind, gentle Giver of all, as the inscrutable and unfathomable God. But the mother always remains the mediator between God and child, and in her and through her the invisible Father appears to the child in His most delectable and consoling form.

*Idee*

*der Elem.,*

§§ 86-90.

*Part played by the Father. Idea of God in the Child*

— The father acts in the same spirit. And as the child loves his father and his mother, is grateful to them and trusts them, so he embraces and honours his Heavenly Father and yields himself to His guidance. The mother does not anxiously trouble herself as to what a conception or what an image the child may make to himself of God, and she has no need to do so, for her child, led by her, advances continuously in the unity of his nature. Her guidance preserves him from inner contradiction, and thereby from the only rock which could make irreligious feeling surge up in him. Just because she shows him God in everything, he feels that he is one with everything, and therefore reassured about everything. God is present to him in everything. He walks before him and is good. He personifies God instinctively, inevitably, of necessity. And in the measure that his soul raises itself above visible Nature, his personified idea of God raises itself above all that is visible and transitory, to the conception of an invisible and eternal Creator and Lord of Nature, of a Leader dwelling in inaccessible regions of light, of a Father of humanity from whose eyes nothing is hid, who may only be approached by what is holy.

*Elementary education* bases religious instruction on the holy foundation of Christianity, and it bases it also on the immovable foundation of the proceedings of the mother. As it takes over the moral and intellectual development of the child, according to the views expounded in the *Book for Mothers*, as soon as he is stimulated and awakened by the mother to a consciousness of himself in all directions of his being,

and can say of himself *I am*, so it takes over his religious development, according to the views laid down in the same book, as soon as he is independently conscious of the conception of God, and can frame the sublime thought, *God is*. With this thought it leads him to Nature and shows him God first in the wonders of Nature, then in himself, and finally in history.

But what do I say? *Elementary education* does this? Oh, no! it does not. It only desires, strives to do this, demands that this should be done. It enunciates its principles and invites all those who feel they have power to put them into application to do so, and then gratefully accepts this application at their hands.

*Conformity of Elementary Education to Christianity*  
— As the method of the development of the human  
*Schwanen-* faculties by *elementary education* is based  
*gesang,* on love and faith, it must necessarily lead  
§ 139. to Christian thought, sentiment, and action.

Of course religion of itself does not turn out a merchant, a tradesman, a scholar, or an artist. But it perfects what it cannot give; it sanctifies what it does not create; it blesses what it does not teach. It grounds, develops, and fortifies the frame of mind which elevates, sanctifies, purifies, and makes truly human in his inward nature the calling of the merchant, the tradesman, and every other calling. Religion makes us deeply conscious of the sensual, the animal part of our flesh and of our blood, which, corrupting and extinguishing, surrounds the divine spark which is the essence of religion, and elevates us to the serious, never ending battle against our fleshly nature.

The quickening and development of man's intellec-

tual faculties alone is not sufficient for true moral education, for that is inseparable from the influence of the animal selfishness of our nature; without the quickening of faculties which oppose with higher power the animal influence of our selfishness, it cannot lead to the development of the pure divine essence of our inner nature, without which no true, no real, morality is conceivable.

This striving after perfection, which alone succeeds in weakening the seeds of discord in us in their growth, and finally in destroying them, can only be the result of an earnest search after divine help and divine grace. The sincerity of this search leads inevitably to devotion and to prayer; but the sincerity of the devotion and the sincerity of the prayer is inconceivable without the sincerity of divine faith and of divine love. So intimately is the essence of the idea of *elementary education* connected with the spirit of Christianity, its divine belief and its divine love.

All means of quickening the power common to all men which do not start from the spirit and the life of our inner divine being, but from the sensual impulses of the flesh and blood of our animal selfishness, are not *elementary*.

It is the complete harmony of *elementary education* with Christianity which also distinguishes it from the education of the age.

# BOOK III

## OTHER DOCTRINES

### CHAPTER I

#### OTHER DOCTRINES

Love in education. — Social polish in education. — On corporal punishment. — On the premature teaching of the sciences. — Educative value of mathematics compared to that of grammar and dead languages. — On the teaching of history.

*Love in Education* — *Love* is only efficacious in the education of men if it is associated with *fear*, for men must learn to root out briars and thorns, and *Lienhard u.* they never do this of themselves, but only *Gertrud,* when they are compelled and accustomed *III, § 70.* to do so. Any one who wishes to do anything with men, or make anything of them, must subdue their wickedness, follow up their depravity, and cause the beads of perspiration of terror to start from their brow when they are doing wrong.

\* \* \*

*Social Polish in Education* — Pestalozzi's establishment does not give this external polish, *Idee* to gain which contact with the world is *der Elem.,* necessary. *§§ 212, 213.*

Every establishment which gives social polish at



the expense of the *thoroughness of knowledge* and of the *individuality* of the *character* is essentially bad.

Besides, Pestalozzi does not believe that good social manners are so essential to success.

\* \* \*

*On Corporal Punishment*—We are certainly wrong in wanting to combat the allurements to sensual desires by, or to expect everything from, mere words, and to believe it possible to guide the child's will at our pleasure, in all circumstances, *Ibid.*, § 267. by mere verbal remonstrances, without corporal punishment. We imagine that our humanity is raised to such a delicacy that it no longer permits us in any case to think of the coarse and repugnant means of blows; but it is not the delicacy of our humane sentiments, it is our weakness, which guides us. We have no confidence in ourselves, we have no confidence in our love. That is why we fear that the child will not have confidence in it either, and we believe that he will not see into our hearts, when we strike him. We do not know either the results of strength which chastises in love, nor those of weakness which shrinks from chastisement.

\* \* \*

*On the Premature Teaching of the Sciences*—In all subjects of instruction (history, geography, and others), which are not purely elementary, it is important to distinguish between a *real*, and *Ibid.*, §§ 227-231. a merely *verbal*, knowledge of them. It is, therefore, important to distinguish between the real study of the subject and a preparatory instruction, given through *sense-perception* and exercises of memory.

There is, then, great danger in leading children, at

too early an age, into the domain of the sciences, or even into their outer courtyards, for the master may easily lose consciousness of his deviation from the simple course of Nature, and then all is lost. Now it is important that he should always be conscious of it, in order energetically to counteract its disastrous effects.

He need not, however, be afraid to deviate from the road on a special occasion, if he is sure of the strength of his general direction, which prevents any disastrous consequences.

\* \* \*

*Educative Value of Mathematics Compared to that of Grammar and Dead Languages*—The road  
*Idee der Elem.*, §§ 199, 200. to intellectual education through grammar and dead languages is really a roundabout road, which may certainly lead the lucky man who does not lose his way to the goal, but the road through the development of the mathematical faculty is the real highway, on which every one who is a good walker, and uses his legs, must reach the goal.

The elementary exercises in *mathematics* quicken the mind and awake active interest, which is the basis of all true development of our powers, in *ten* children, where exercises in grammar and dead languages would only awake it in *one*.

That is why Pestalozzi chose this road, and made mathematical exercises the foundation of the teaching in his school.

\* \* \*

*On the Teaching of History*—It is not wise to teach  
*Idee der Elem.*, § 228. young children the facts of history with their causes and effects, and with apprecia-

tion of their value or non-value. One accustoms them in this way to judge historical events and men's acts at an age when they are still incapable of forming an accurate opinion on them, and, what is worse, one gives them knowledge, at this age of innocence, of the wickedness and violence of the world. It is unquestionable that the natural course of the moral and intellectual education is thereby retarded.

## CHAPTER II

### PESTALOZZI ON HIS OWN WORK

Pestalozzi's application of the method. — Character and advantages of the elementary method. — Reply to some criticisms. — Pestalozzi's belief in his work.

*Pestalozzi's Application of the Method* — Pestalozzi's account of his experiments in teaching his little boy, *Tageblätter*, preserved in the diary he kept at the 1774. . . beginning of 1774, is as follows:—

*Feb. 1st.* I taught him by the help of figures and objects the meaning of the words *without, within, above, below, between, beside*. I showed him snow turning to water in the room. . . .

*Feb. 2nd.* I tried to make him understand by the knowledge of the true significance of the first numbers, the exact meaning of the words which he could say by heart without knowing their true meaning. With this example, the most incapable of men would have been struck at seeing what an obstacle it is to the knowledge of truth, to know words with which one does not associate exact notions of things. The habit of not conceiving any difference in the mind between the names of numbers had already been acquired, and prevented all attention. 7, 8, 9, 5, 17 were for him exactly the same thing. . . . Why did I commit the folly of precipitately teaching him words so important for the knowledge of truth, without taking care

to make the notions which they represent precise and distinct from the first number I taught him? How natural it would have been not to make him say *three* until he had learnt to know *two* exactly in all objects! and how far I have strayed from the path of Nature!<sup>1</sup>

*Character and Advantages of the Elementary Method*  
—The *elementary method* does not tire the children, for part of the instruction flows naturally from the one before, and each result is the natural result of the one before.<sup>2</sup> *Idee der Elem.*, § 196.

It does not exclude any other method of education. It would not be what it is, if it did not absorb into itself all that is true, and all that is good in all the others, in whatever form it may appear. *Ibid.*, § 242.

The child educated by Pestalozzi's method is capable of teaching others. *Schwanengesang*, § 89.

*Elementary education* interests children in handicraft, which the education of the time does not. *Ibid.*, § 121.

*Elementary education* may be compared to an oak, the roots of which not only guarantee it a flourishing growth, but preserve it from outward causes of destruction. *Idee der Elem.*, § 209.

*Elementary education* must, and will, keep perception and thought, action and speech, of the child in harmony. *Ibid.*, § 221.

<sup>1</sup> Morf, I, p. 127.

<sup>2</sup> Pestalozzi recognises that this ideal has not yet been realised in his school, and takes pains to point out that the idea in general must not be confounded with the necessarily imperfect application he has made of it.

*Wie Gertrud . . .*—Pestalozzi himself relates that Glayre, a member of the Executive Directory, one day made the following remark: *Vous voulez mécaniser l'éducation.* And he adds: "He hit the nail on the head, and decidedly put the words in my mouth which described the essence of my aim and all my means."

*Reply to Some Criticisms*— "The elementary education," people say, "is not adapted to the needs of the people; it is too obscure and too mechanical."

Pestalozzi's answer to this objection is as follows: If it seems to the ones too bright a light for the lower *Idee der Elem.*, § 120. classes, on the other hand, it seems to others not bright enough; accustomed to artificial illumination and dark lanterns, they find mere daylight insufficient. It is extraordinary that men who make no objection when the bulk of the children in their country are subjected from morning to night to the most miserable school mechanism, find the elementary method too mechanical, too wearisome, and too lengthy for country children to devote a few years to it. On the other hand, they find no objection to these same country children being compelled to spend all the years of their youth at schools in which they learn neither to think, nor to speak, nor to observe, nor to work, but where they are on the contrary unnaturally kept back.

*Pestalozzi's Belief in his Work*— We have had pride cast in our teeth, says Pestalozzi, and have *Ibid.*, §§ 162-171. been accused of attaching a greater value to the idea of *elementary education* than it actually possesses. It is true that we attach a very great value to this idea, and many others base, as we

do, great hopes for the welfare of the human race on it. Many of these have actually maintained that the idea of *elementary education* gave promise of elevating its pupils, both morally and intellectually, and consequently would result in elevating a great number of men, and even in a regeneration of the human race.

Pestalozzi thinks that this idea is calculated to cause education to be raised to the rank of a science, which must undoubtedly tend to develop the innate moral, intellectual, and artistic faculties of the pupil in a manner which would bring them into harmony with one another and at the same time satisfy the needs of his nature; and thereby generally promote and secure the moral, intellectual, and artistic elevation of the human race.

This, however, does not imply that the creative work of *elementary education* is really established, either practically or theoretically. Pestalozzi does not even maintain that he will be able to establish it in his life, in a condition even approaching to perfection. He is only glad to have succeeded in shedding some light on this aim, and at having persuaded many noble minds to strive to realise it. Otherwise he is not of a visionary nature, and has no desire to make others so.

And if it were true that some of his hopes were exaggerated, and that here or there an error had crept in, could it be otherwise? Pestalozzi thinks not, and, in his consciousness of the earnest nature of his efforts after something better, would have nothing to say on this topic but, "Let others do better what we do badly! let others shame us by higher views, by nobler deeds, by a more energetic intervention in the

actual life of the world; let every one of our presumptuous claims be rejected; let others divert the attention of governments and of nations from us to themselves, by more evident presentation of the truth, by attempts which succeed better, and by results happier than ours. Let a better man divert it to something better, a nobler man to something more noble. . . . We ask for nothing more; it is bliss to disappear; to live at peace and to die unnoticed is bliss indeed. I have not had the one, may I have the other?"

And yet had his work merited that? Has it been worth nothing at all, had no result? He appeals to his country to decide.

And even if he have exaggerated its extent and conceived too exuberant a joy and too high-flown hopes, is that a reason to mock at him?

No one has had more need to be patient and humble than he, for without patience and without humility his work would have long ceased to exist and would not last another hour.

*Mut and Demut (Courage and Humility)* was his motto from the very beginning of his work. "What should I be proud of? I did not choose my work; it dropped into my hands before I knew what my appointed task was; and when I knew, when I had recognised this work, as my task in life, I could not withdraw my hand; it was and is my duty. And what I do, I must do, even if much be done in the prospect of future oblivion."

The perfect is formed in men's hands only through the imperfect. As regards our aim we are still at the mere rude commencement, and it is not wise to indulge



in many day-dreams of what it will be at the height of its perfection.

Consider the plant how it grows, you cannot tell how it expands; but you see its blossoming forth and you have a firm belief that it will come to maturity, although you are not sure of the warmth of the sun, the dew, the rain which you consider essential for the growth of the plant, even for the following day. Just so I see my work prosper in the blessing of its surroundings, near and remote, and these are just as little in my might; but I nevertheless have a firm belief that it will come to maturity. This belief, as well as the confidence which I have in my happiness which depends on it, is at the same time combined with the deeply rooted consciousness of the lack of sufficient power for all that the really perfect application of this idea demands.

May this belief remain with me! May it, under all circumstances, soothe and strengthen all who share my work. But let us not be dazzled by it, let us not consider the accidental element of our passing happiness as the glorious noontide of our work! May we not be carried away at the sight of single successful parts of our attempt, to deceive ourselves an instant as to the backwardness of this work as a whole! Truly that would be the greatest misfortune, the greatest obstacle which we could lay in the path of our aims and our hopes. While we rejoice at present good fortune, may we by no means deceive ourselves as to the extent of what remains to be done for the complete attainment of our aim!

But in spite of his sense of the imperfection of his work, he embodies his faith in its ultimate success in the words, "*Idee der Elem.*, § 187. find."



PART III  
PESTALOZZI'S INFLUENCE



## CHAPTER I

### PESTALOZZI'S INFLUENCE IN GERMANY, ESPECIALLY IN PRUSSIA

Interest taken by German governments in Pestalozzi's method. — Organisation of primary education prepared by Frederick II. — Popular education and the raising of Prussia. — Fichte's *Discourses to the German Nation*. — Action taken by Niccolovius and Süvern. — Prussian pupils sent to Pestalozzi's institute. — Pestalozzi's influence on Herbart.

It was in Germany that Pestalozzi's ideas had the most rapid and most wide influence, and the best application; one may even say that it was through Germany that it penetrated into other countries. It is therefore indispensable to know exactly what this influence was, and to it alone it seems to us necessary to devote a more particular attention.

The numerous visitors who came from Germany to see Pestalozzi's institute were naturally the first to contribute to the spread of his ideas and the application of his method in their country. One among them, Gruner, whom we have mentioned in the foregoing pages, undertook in 1805 the management of a Pestalozzian school in Frankfort, where Froebel first taught,<sup>1</sup> and retained it until 1810. From this time

<sup>1</sup> Vide H. Courthorpe Bowen, *Froebel and Education through Self-activity*. New York, 1897.

Frankfort became one of the most important centres of the Pestalozzi movement. Nor were the German governments slow in taking an interest in the new method; among others the Bavarian government sent a young master, named Müller, to Burgdorf in 1803, and he opened a Pestalozzian school at Mainz. But of all German states, it was Prussia that followed Pestalozzi's work with most interest, and Prussia was to derive the greatest profit from it, as it had derived the greatest profit from the philanthropist movement. We shall therefore dwell at more length on the influence of Pestalozzi's doctrines in Prussia, which was enormous, and give the historical reasons for it.

As in secondary education, the honour of having paved the way for the organisation of primary instruction in Prussia is due to Frederick II and his minister Zedlitz. We have called attention to the services rendered by Rochow, the philanthropist, to the cause of popular education, in the introduction to this volume. It is interesting to see with what interest, with what enthusiasm even, Zedlitz, struck by the justice of Rochow's ideas, followed and encouraged their application, in order to meet with the views of his master, who aimed at nothing less than to take away the direction of schools from the church. In a letter in which the minister congratulated Rochow on having written instructive books for country children, the following passage must be mentioned. "Permit me to consider you henceforth as a man who, in order to further the great views of the best of kings, is capable of effectively helping me in the reform of the instruction of country children, a man who has sufficient patriotism to be willing to lend me his help."

He even went so far as to recognise the principle of free and of compulsory education in the following terms: "I think it is a very bad thing that the village inhabitant should be obliged to pay for the instruction of his children, for the school fee, however low it may be fixed, is very often in bad times a reason to prevent the peasant from sending his children to school. Now, I should like every child over five years of age to be compelled to go to school, and no child to be admitted to confirmation until he had acquired a certain specified amount of instruction."<sup>1</sup> Zedlitz was as desirous as Rochow of giving the peasants an education more in conformity to their state of life, and condemned the methods of popular instruction then in use. "As all instruction should tend, as you so justly remark, to educate the children of the peasants with a view to their future calling, and give their intelligence a culture in conformity with their state of life, it is very evident that instruction thus given must be infinitely more laborious than that given when the schoolmaster contents himself with making the children learn a page of Luther's catechism by heart."<sup>2</sup> Finally, two years later, on the subject of an inspection, he wrote again to Rochow, and speaking of the clergy, he says, "It is difficult to plough the land with such a team."<sup>3</sup>

Unfortunately Frederick II had not time to finish

<sup>1</sup> *Vide* Pinloche, *La Réforme de l'éducation en Allemagne, au 18<sup>e</sup> siècle*, p. 424.

<sup>2</sup> Letter from Zedlitz to Rochow, of the 7th of January, 1773 (*Ibid.*).

<sup>3</sup> Letter from Zedlitz to Rochow, of the 11th of April, 1775 (*Ibid.*, p. 518).

his reform, and under the reactionary government of his successor, Frederick William II, there was naturally no question of it. It was not until 1798 that Frederick William III, returning to the liberal traditions of the great king, devoted himself to the study of the important question of the organisation of popular instruction. "It is time," he wrote to his minister, von Massow, "to at last consider the question of giving a suitable education and instruction to the children of the middle and lower classes."

We see that the ground was well prepared to receive the fruitful germ of Pestalozzi's ideas; it was actually at this time that they penetrated into Prussia. As early as 1792, Rochow himself wrote to the author of *Leonard and Gertrude* in the following enthusiastic terms: "Pestalozzi! Faust! Wise friends of man! Accept herewith the public expression of my gratitude for your last works. I also believe as you do, that humanity suffers from ills which one can cure. . . ."<sup>1</sup> We know that the public subscription for Pestalozzi's work had been opened in Germany in 1801; Gruner among others had warmly recommended it, basing his recommendation on the report of Ith, in the *Neue Berlinische Monatschrift* in 1803.<sup>2</sup> Finally, Herbart had published, in 1802, his *Pestalozzi's Idea of an A B C of Sense-perception*.<sup>3</sup> All this praise naturally attracted the king's attention. "Pestalozzi's method," he wrote to Gedike on the 23d of April, 1803, "whose praises are in every one's mouth just

<sup>1</sup> Vide Bruno Gebhardt, *Die Einführung der Pestalozzischen Methode in Preussen*. Berlin, 1896.

<sup>2</sup> Bd. 10, p. 273.

<sup>3</sup> *Pestalozzi's Idee eines A B C der Anschauung*, 1802.



now, has also attracted my attention." And the king commissioned Gedike to go to Burgdorf to study the famous method on the spot, and draw up a report. No one could better acquit himself of this mission than the reorganiser of secondary education in Prussia.<sup>1</sup> Unfortunately he died on the 2d of May, 1803, before he had been able to fulfil the king's desire. Another Prussian envoy, chosen by Voss, the minister Jeziorowski, an inspector of training colleges for teachers, came to Burgdorf, where he remained from the end of July until the beginning of October, 1803. In spite of his favourable report, the king was of opinion that the introduction of the new method in primary schools would be premature, for he feared "that the instruction thus given was too wide in extent," and in his eyes it sufficed that the children of the lower orders, who were above all destined to manual labour, should merely learn "besides the necessary moral and religious instruction, reading, writing, and arithmetic, and to sing some well-chosen ancient hymns."<sup>2</sup> Consequently he only authorised the application of Pestalozzi's method, concurrently with that of the philanthropist Olivier,<sup>3</sup> for the best pupils of the training colleges. As the

<sup>1</sup> See the important work accomplished by this pedagogue in our book, *La Réforme de l'éducation en Allemagne au 18<sup>e</sup> siècle*, pp. 521 *et seq.*

<sup>2</sup> Cabinet order of the 31st of December, 1803. (Bruno Gebhardt, *Die Einführung*, etc., p. 11.)

<sup>3</sup> Olivier, who was born in 1759 at La Sarra (French Switzerland) and died in 1815, was the author of the method of reading which bears his name, and then made a great sensation. He had taught Frederick William IV, king of Prussia, to read, and had been Basedow's colleague at the Dessau Philanthropinum. (Pinloche, *La Réforme*, etc., p. 156.)

minister returned to the charge in a new report, drawn up on the 13th of June, 1804, the king finally granted the authorisation to apply the method in the primary schools, but not to make it obligatory, on the 19th of January following.

This time opposition was forthcoming from the Higher Council of Public Education (*Oberschulkollegium*, created in 1787). Some members of this body relied chiefly on Soyaux's report to throw discredit on the ideas of the Swiss pedagogue. In order to put an end to these discussions, it was decided that it would be better to await the result of the experiment authorised for the schools of southern Prussia, which the state had taken over. During this time, Klewitz, who was later on Chancellor of the Exchequer, published in the *Neue Berlinische Monatschrift*<sup>1</sup> a very judicious article, which summed up the best-known criticisms on Pestalozzi's method, and was especially based on the reports or writings of Jeziorowski, Ith, Herbart, and Soyaux. In this article he tried to give an impartial account of this method, the weak points of which had not escaped him. Finally, one of the visitors of the Burgdorf institute, Plamann, had obtained the authorisation to open a Pestalozzian school in Berlin in 1805, which flourished greatly until 1830. ✓ The events of 1806, which abruptly ended the reorganisation thus begun, were to show better than all discussions how urgent the necessity was, and hasten the fulfilment of the project. "*The state must regain by intellectual forces what it has lost in physical power,*" said the vanquished king at Jena. It was Fichte, the philosopher, the ardent apostle of independence, who

<sup>1</sup> Vol. II, p. 161.

undertook to give effect to these memorable words in his *Discourses to the German Nation*,<sup>1</sup> in which he demonstrated that the safety of Germany henceforth lay in national education. Now the reform of secondary education, thanks to the philanthropist movement, was accomplished,<sup>2</sup> the religious neutrality of the school also demanded by Basedow was legally recognised, and the schools for all classes were declared state institutions by the Prussian code of 1803.<sup>3</sup> The work of Frederick the Great, who had dreamed of establishing a national education, was then already largely realised; but it was not yet complete, for primary instruction still remained to be organised. It is on this point that Fichte dwelt with all his eloquence. "They are going to give us a Constitution," he says, "to indicate to us our alliances and the use of our forces," etc. "They have thought of everything but education." And, asking on what foundations "the new education," *i.e.* national education, ought to be based, he answers: "On the method of instruction invented and proposed by Heinrich Pestalozzi, the application of which we have seen to be so successful."<sup>4</sup> Why? Perhaps on account of the novelty of the processes of this method? Not at all. Because "Pestalozzi's essential aim has been to elevate the lower classes, and efface all differences between them and the educated class; because it is not only popular education that is thus realised, but national

<sup>1</sup> *Reden an die deutsche Nation*, 1808.

<sup>2</sup> See for the details of this reform: Pinloche, *La Réforme*, etc., pp. 508-531.

<sup>3</sup> *Das allgemeine Landrecht für die preussischen Staaten*, 2 par Theil, lit. XII, §§ 1-11. This constitution is still in force at the present time.

<sup>4</sup> Rede IX.

✓ education; and because Pestalozzi's doctrine has enough power to help nations and the whole human race to rise out of the miserable state in which they were wallowing."<sup>1</sup> And he does not hesitate to put Pestalozzi beside Luther.

These words should not be lost. From this time, the name of Pestalozzi was identified with the idea of the national regeneration, and his works were read more eagerly than ever. It is related that Queen Luise was so touched by the story of *Leonard and Gertrude*, that she wanted to go herself to Pestalozzi and thank him in the name of humanity.<sup>2</sup> It was at this eminently favourable time that two of the most fervent of Pestalozzi's disciples, Nicolovius and Süvern, entered the ministry for home affairs to direct the department of public instruction, which was attached to it.<sup>3</sup> From that time the Pestalozzi method met with no more opposition, and reigned supreme in Prussian schools. Nay more, the government sent, as we have seen, pupil-teachers to Pestalozzi, and determined to found two training colleges.

By a cabinet order of the 6th of January, 1809, Stein, the minister, thus enunciated the fundamental principles of the reorganisation of primary instruction:—

1. School education and instruction are the affair of the state.

✕ 2. The aim of primary schools is not to impart knowledge, but to form the judgment, common sense, the moral and religious spirits.

<sup>1</sup> Rede IX.

<sup>2</sup> Adams, *Königin Luise*, p. 263.

<sup>4</sup> It was not until 1817 that a special ministry for public instruction, health, and religion was founded.

3. As regards the teaching of religion peculiar to each confession, it will be reserved, if possible, for the ecclesiastic of the place. ✓

4. Schoolmasters must prepare themselves for their profession.

5. Special attention must be paid to the exterior as well as the interior, to the cleanliness and sanitary conditions of the schoolrooms, and to the regular attendance of the pupils.

(Some regulations as to the inspection of schools follow.)

It is important to remark that it was not the external aspect of the method which most attracted the reorganisers of the Prussian primary schools. In this respect the instructions given by Süvern to the young masters sent to Yverdon are most worthy of note. "It is not exactly the mechanical side of the method," said he, "that you are to learn there; you can do that elsewhere, and it would not be worth while to go to such expense for that. Your chief aim will not be either to break the outer shell in order to taste the almond, *i.e.* to penetrate the spirit, with a mere view to cleverness in teaching. No; but what I want you to do is to warm yourselves at the sacred fire which burns in the heart of this man so full of strength and love, whose work has remained far below what he originally desired, below the essential idea of his life, of which the method is only a feeble product. You must give yourselves completely up, without any preconceived ideas of your own, to the life and pedagogical activity which are nowhere so busy as there, which daily produce new and interesting phenomena, and attract most important visitors; you must let this

splendid, vigorous Nature influence you during the happy time when you are still most sensible to its impressions. And under the common influence of this action of Nature and of the persons, teachers and taught, assembled in the hallowed circle of the institute, every spark of the heart and of the mind still quiet within you ought to burst into flame, and this influence ought to surround you until it has penetrated your inmost soul, and has brought you to find yourselves, and to recognise this truth, that man is nothing else but a simple nature which develops itself in every individual in the most varied fashion. . . . Once you have received this pedagogic consecration, teaching as mere teaching will disappear for you; you will see it in the most intimate connection of its necessary components, of their reciprocal influence, and of the action of each particular object on the whole, which is man, and is only a ray of the primitive force of the world, which is the divinity. You will have reached perfection, when you have clearly seen that education is an art, and the most sublime and the most holy art of all, and in what connection it is with the great art of the education of nations, which is one and indivisible with it. . . . Do not forget that the elements in all sciences are far from being the easiest part of them, that profound knowledge of a subject is necessary to a thorough treatment of the same in the school. . . . The characteristic point of Pestalozzi's method is that it is as fruitful for a scientific and a technical education, as it is profitable for human culture." <sup>1</sup>

The young masters sent to Yverdon were naturally

<sup>1</sup> Bruno Gebhardt, *Die Einführung*, etc., pp. 33 et seq.

on their return the most active propagators of the Pestalozzian method in Prussia. Moreover, a central training college for teachers was founded by government at the orphanage in Königsberg, and placed under the management of Zeller. But as Süvern desired, it was less the mechanical application than the spirit of the method which prevailed. A long experience was not necessary to cause the rejection of certain exercises, to which Pestalozzi evidently attached too much importance, *e.g.* those in geometry and arithmetic based on his diagrams. On the other hand, great pains were taken to retain the valuable part of Pestalozzi's idea, *i.e.*, according to Zeller's own words, "to instruct the pupil in such a manner that he may learn to gradually develop, educate, and perfect every object of *knowledge* and *power*, from the first elements, in conscious and independent activity, in accordance with its own nature."

Finally, it was long not sufficiently recognised<sup>1</sup> that one of the most active propagators of Pestalozzi's doctrines in Germany was Herbart himself. If we remember that this philosopher, attracted from the beginning by Pestalozzi's ideas on sense-perception, on which he immediately commented,<sup>2</sup> and on the natural method of teaching, which he later on scientifically expounded, was to create on this basis what has been called in Germany *scientific pedagogy*, what

<sup>1</sup> To Dr. Theodor Wiget is due the merit of having called attention to this important fact in his valuable work, *Pestalozzi und Herbart*, Dresden, 1891-1892, which we regret to see does not exhaust the subject.

<sup>2</sup> See his work, *Pestalozzi's Idee eines A B C der Anschauung*, Göttingen, 1802.

we more correctly called the *science of education*, the existence of which no one nowadays contests, we cannot but recognise that that alone is a title to fame which should of itself suffice to immortalise the work and the name of Pestalozzi.



## CHAPTER II

### PESTALOZZI'S INFLUENCE IN OTHER COUNTRIES

IN other countries, the direct influence of Pestalozzi was limited to isolated instances. In France, the philosopher Maine de Biran, after Pestalozzi's fruitless attempt to make his method known during his stay in Paris, founded, in 1808, a Pestalozzian school at Bergerac, his native town, where he was then deputy mayor (*sous-préfet*), and placed it under the management of Barraud, who had been sent him by Pestalozzi. Although the school continued to exist until 1881, it may be said to have been nothing but an ordinary boarding school, and had no pedagogic influence.<sup>1</sup> From 1809, Stapfer remarked on the failure of Maine de Biran, in a letter to Pestalozzi, which concluded with these words, "So that I do not for the present see any possibility, not even the shadow of a probability, of acclimatising the method in France."<sup>2</sup> In Spain, Voitel of Soleure succeeded in founding, in 1805, a Pestalozzian school at Madrid, and a training college for teachers at Santander. In 1806 a school called *El Real Instituto Pestalozziano Militar* was founded by a state decree at Madrid, with Voitel as head master and two teachers sent by Pestalozzi.

<sup>1</sup> See the history of this school in the *Revue Pédagogique* of the 15th of April, 1893, in an article by W. Pauliet.

<sup>2</sup> *Pestalozzi Blätter*, 1889, p. 31.

Political events brought about the suppression of the *Real Instituto* in 1808, and under Napoleon's sway there was naturally no longer any question of Pestalozzi's method.

In Copenhagen a school was likewise opened on the return of the two teachers, Ström and Torlitz, who had been sent to Burgdorf by their government in 1803. The experiment was considered unsatisfactory, and the teaching of too mechanical a nature, and the establishment was closed in 1806.

Such, with one or two other isolated instances, were the chief attempts made in Europe to put Pestalozzi's ideas into application. All were unsuccessful, and we may therefore say that Germany was the first, and for long the only, nation which succeeded in extracting the good part of it and seizing its true spirit. It was only much later, and certainly owing to German example, that other countries, especially France, England, and the United States, were gradually able to profit by the good which the great pedagogue had desired to attain, without, however, succeeding in attaining it himself.

# INDEX

## A

- A B C of Sense-perception*, 60, 252.  
 Aesthetic education, 173.  
 Appeal to philanthropists, 20.  
 Arithmetic, A B C of, 253.  
 Artistic education, 171-172.

## B

- Babell, the faithful servant, 4.  
 Basedow, xi.  
 Battier, Felix, 29.  
 Beyme, Von, 99.  
 Bibliography, xv.  
 Birrfeld, farm at, 13; a failure, 14, 16.  
 Birthday celebration, 81.  
 Bluntschli, 8; death of, 10, 12.  
 Bodmer, 6, 10, 11; founder of *Helvetian Society*, 9.  
*Book for Mothers*, 60, 211, 235, 237.  
 Books, the first, 215.  
 Brettinger, 6.  
 Burgdorf, schools at, 33-60.  
 Buss, teacher of music, 49.

## C

- Child, first education of, by its mother, 161; birth of, to moral life, 267. (*See also* Moral education.)  
 Child of three, experiment on, 214.  
 Children's mental powers, 47.  
 Christianity and elementary education, 257.  
*Christopher and Elsa*, 26.  
 Comenius, xi.  
 Common sense, 86-87.  
*Consulta* at Paris, 59-60.  
*Contrat Social*, Rousseau's, 8.

- Corporal punishment, 45, 56, 277.  
 Cotta, publisher, 103, 109.

## D

- Discipline, 55.  
 Doctrines, xiv.  
 Dysli, Samuel, teacher, 38.

## E

- Education, elementary, 32, 34, 83, 90, 109, 126, 134, 152-153; aim of, 164; definition of, 165; perfection in, impossible, 176; faith and love the basis of, 183; principles of, 216, 245, 274, 281.  
 Education necessary for society, 121; aim of, 125, 136; no general rules of, 127, 135; definition and principle of, 129; practical, 133; private and public, 146; defects of, 149; catechetical method, 154; Socratic method, 155.  
 Education of the poor, xi, 18, 27, 144.  
 Ego, the, as the centre of education, 211, 239.  
*Emile*, Rousseau's, xii, 8.  
*Erinnerer, Der*, 9.  
 Esterhazy, Prince, 100.

## F

- Faith, 183, 270.  
 Fellenberg, 62, 65, 103-109, 116.  
 Fichte, visit from, 28; *Discourses to the German Nation*, 29, 66, 295.  
 Form, 229, 232, 237, 252.  
 Francke, x.  
 Frederick II, x, 290.  
 Frederick William III, 292.  
 Füssli, 13, 19.

## G

- Games as methods, 181.  
 Girard, Father, report of, on Yverdon, 86-90.  
 God, the idea of, 167, 270, 273.  
 Grammar, 246.  
 Grandfather, teacher at Hōngg, 5.  
 Greeks, culture and education of the, 151-152.  
 Gruner on "the moral reviews," 57-59; his school in Frankfort, 289; 292.  
 Guillaume, 90 n.  
 Gumps, M. de, 76.

## H

- Helvetian Diet, aid from the, 52; grants withdrawn, 61; inspects Yverdon, 85; vote of gratitude, 90.  
*Helvetian Society*, the, 9, 10.  
*Helvetisches Volksblatt*, 81.  
 Herbart on Pestalozzi, 46-49, 292; an active Pestalozzian, 299.  
*Hermit's Evening, A*, 25.  
 Hirzel's *Peasant Philosopher*, 11.  
 History, teaching of, 278.  
 Hofwyl, 62, 108.  
 Home for poor children, 18-24.  
 Home influence, 187.  
*How Gertrude teaches her Children*, 51, 83, 125.

## I

- Ignorance, causes of, 140.  
 Illuminated, Order of the, 27.  
*Illustrations to my A B C Book*, 26.  
 Intellectual education, 168; psychological foundation of, 206.  
 Iselin, 20, 24; death of, 29.  
 Ith, Dean, 52, 292.

## J

- Jezirowski's reports, 298.  
 Judgment, the, 170; founded on sense-perception, 200.  
 Jullien's reports, 96; 104, 108-109.

## K

- Klewitz, 294.  
 Knowledge, origins of, 198.  
 Krüsi, 40, 41, 65, 91, 94, 108, 111, 118.

## L

- Labour, industrial, 18-21, 82, 80, 123, 181, 188-189, 145.  
 Language as the basis of instruction, 218, 229, 233; study of, 236-241; importance of, 242; development of, in child, 248, 249; starting-point and aim, 244; relations of, 248.  
 Languages, study of, 169, 249.  
 Lavater, 11, 18, 19.  
 Legrand, support from, 81.  
*Leonard and Gertrude*, 25-27, 121, 256, 296.  
 Leopold, Emperor, 27.  
 Life educates, 177.  
 Louise, Queen, 66, 296.  
 Love in education, 276.

## M

- Maine de Biran's school at Bergerac, 301.  
 Man, divine nature of, 256.  
 Masters and pupils, 56.  
 Mathematics, 278.  
 Memorising, 46, 48.  
 Method of sense-perception, 210; in application, 217, 284-251; general rules, 225; supplements even science, 227; elements of the, 229; result, 254.  
 Method, Pestalozzi's, an enigma, 73; 87.  
 Method, the elementary, 179, 250; aim and originality of, 186; positive, 188, 191; universal, 192; relations of, 198; imitates nature, 198; imitates the mother, 195; Pestalozzi's application of the, 280; character and advantages of the, 281.  
 Mieg, 97.  
 Military exercises, 80.

Models to follow, 123, 130.  
 Moral education, 56-59, 63, 167, 260-270.  
 Mother tongue, 249.  
 Müllingen, 13.  
 Müller, 10.  
 Münchenbuchsee, Institute at, 61-63.  
 Muralt, Johann von, a colleague, 60, 63.

## N

Näf, Elizabeth, the model for Gertrude, 29; Mme. Krüsi, 77-78, 97, 115.  
 Nägeli's book of songs, 81.  
 Neuhof, 15, 18-24, 29, 97.  
 New Year's Day, 81.  
 Nicolovius, 23, 66, 296.  
 Niederer, Johann, joins Institute, 60, 64, 74; rivalry with Schmid, 83-85, 93; reply to attack, 94; 96-93; leaves Yverdon, 103; 107.  
 Number, 229, 237, 252.

## P

Perceptions, 202. (*See* Sense-perception.)  
 Pestalozzi, Heinrich, born, 8; childhood, 4-6; at Zürich schools and Carolinum, 6-7; influenced by *Émile* and the *Contrat Social*, 3; joins the *Helvetic Society*, 9-10; studies agriculture, 11-13; marriage, 13; birth of a son, 14; his want of foresight, 16-17, 66, 97; Home for poor children, 18-24; appeal to philanthropists, 20-21; reports on Institute, 23, 92; first writings, 25; joins the *Illuminated*, 27; made a citizen of France, 28; wish to be a schoolmaster, 30; at Stanz, 32; his teaching, 33-35, 38-41, 54, 69; Institute at Burgdorf, 51; aided by Helvetic government, 52; "moral reviews," 55-59; member of *Consulta*, 59; stops teaching, 63; quarrels with Fellenberg, 62, 65, 109; literary work, 63; home life, 79; influenced by

Niederer, 83; sides with Schmid, 92-93; disaster, 97; decorated by Emperor Alexander, 99; works published, 102; death of wife, 103; poem, 106; subscriptions for, 109; death, 116; epitaph, 117; his educational theory, 119 *et seq.*; works, 120; essential aim, 142; reply to criticisms, 282; belief in his work, 282; influence in Germany, 289; in other countries, 301-302.

Pestalozzi, Johann Baptist, 8.  
 Physical education, 175.  
 Progression, regularity of, 47.  
 Prussia, educational movements in, 290; reorganises primary instruction, 296.  
 Pupil-teachers, 67, 68, 297.

## R

Ramsauer, Johann, on Pestalozzi's methods, 42-45, 63, 94, 100, 103.  
 Ranmer, Karl von, at Yverdon, 90-94.  
 Religion, 256.  
 Religious education, 259, 267, 271; by mother, 272; by father, 273.  
 Rochow, x, 290, 292.  
 Rousseau, xii, 8.  
 Rndiments, perfection in, 33-34.  
 Rulers, responsibility of, 133.

## S

Schinz, 16, 19.  
 Schmid, Joseph, 74, 84, 91-93; at Bregenz, 95; return of, 93; influence of, 102-105; Pestalozzi's tribute to, 116.  
 School, the, 147; and play, 157.  
 Schools, evil influence of, 129.  
 Schröter to Pestalozzi, 66.  
 Schulthess, Anna, 12; marriage, 13.  
 Schulthess, Heinrich, 17.  
 Schultess, the banker, 12, 13, 14, 16.  
 Sciences, premature teaching of the, 277.  
 Ségesser, Luise, 95.  
 Sense-perception, xi-xii, 18, 33; A B C of, 39; 72; definition of, 197; and

- thought, 200 ; transformation of, 201 ; general processes, 204 ; man the centre of, 208 ; method of, 210. (*See also* Method of sense-perception.)  
Singing, 49, 81.  
Social manners, 276.  
*Society of the Friends of Education*, 50.  
Sound, 231, 234.  
Soyaux on Pestalozzi, 52-57, 294.  
Square, the, 253.  
Stanz, Orphanage at, 31-36.  
Stapfer reforms the schools, 30, 37.  
Subscription, 109.  
Süvern, instructions of, 297.  
*Swan's Dirge*, 114, 281.  
Swiss Directory employed Pestalozzi at Stanz, 31-36 ; at Burgdorf, 38.
- T
- Teaching of Arithmetic by Sense-perception*, 60.  
Teaching, psychological course of, 208.
- Text-books, 223-224.  
Tobler, 49, 63, 85.  
Toerlitz, on Pestalozzi, 82.  
Truttmann and Businger, reports of, 85.  
Tschiffeli, 11, 13.
- V
- Verbal instruction, 155.  
Vocabulary, importance of, 217, 225, 230.  
Vogel, 97.  
Vulliemin on Pestalozzi, 70-74.
- Y
- Yes or No, Opinions by a Free Man*, 28.  
Yverdon, Institute at, 61, 65-118 ; school life at, 63-69, 71-72, 75-78 ; management, 88-90 ; deficit at, 97.
- Z
- Zedlitz, 290.  
Zinzendorf, Count von, 26.  
Zürich Carolinum, idealism at, 7.

## WORKS BY THE SAME AUTHOR

- Leçons pratiques de langue allemande.* 3 vols. Paris, 1889-1893.
- Vocabulaire étymologique allemand-français et français-allemand.*  
1 vol. Paris, 1893.
- La Réforme de l'éducation en Allemagne au dix-huitième siècle.*  
(Gained a prize from the French Academy.) 1 vol., 597 pp.  
Paris, 1890.
- La Chalotais als Vorkämpfer der weltlichen Schule.* Leipzig, 1891.
- Herbart : Principales œuvres pédagogiques (translation).* 1 vol.,  
400 pp. Paris and Lille, 1893.
- Geschichte der Philanthropinismus.* 1 vol., 494 pp. Leipzig, 1896.
- Die Reform der Universitäten in Frankreich.* Leipzig, 1896.
- L'Enseignement secondaire en Allemagne, d'après les documents officiels.* 1 vol., xxvii and 129 pp. Paris, 1900.
- De l'enseignement des langues vivantes : essai d'orientation pédagogique basé sur l'histoire et l'expérience.* Paris, 1901.







UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY  
Los Angeles

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

SUBJECT TO FINE IF NOT RETURNED TO  
EDUCATION LIBRARY

JAN 28 1976

DEC 5 1961

RECEIVED

RECEIVED

APR 12 1962

AUG 30 1968

JAN 24 1976

APR 18 1962

ED./PSYCH.  
LIBRARY

ED./PSYCH.  
LIBRARY

VC S 4-23-62 (B)

APR 30 1962

REC'D COE LIB  
NOV 20 1972

QL APR 6 1981

RECEIVED

MAY 7 1962

NOV 30 1972

MAR 9 '81 -3 PM

MAY 26 1963

RECEIVED

ED/PSYCH LIB.

AUG 6 1964

DEC 1 - 1972

EDU./PSYCH.  
LIBRARY

MAY 12 1967

MAY 5 1967 MAY 1 1974

ED./PSYCH.  
RECEIVED

RECEIVED

JUL 24 1968

AUG 30 1968

MAY 1 - 1974

ED./PSYCH.

EDU./PSYCH.  
LIBRARY

rm L9-507-9:60(B3610s4)444

UCLA-ED/PSYCH Library

LB 627 P65 1902



UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



A 000 961 509 7

